Cisco UCS C-Series Integrated Management Controller GUI Configuration Guide, Release 3.1

First Published: 2017-08-17

Last Modified: 2018-03-21

Americas Headquarters
Cisco Systems, Inc.
170 West Tasman Drive
San Jose, CA 95134-1706
USA
http://www.cisco.com
Tel: 408 526-4000
800 553-NETS (6387)
Fax: 408 527-0883

THE SPECIFICATIONS AND INFORMATION REGARDING THE PRODUCTS IN THIS MANUAL ARE SUBJECT TO CHANGE WITHOUT NOTICE. ALL STATEMENTS, INFORMATION, AND RECOMMENDATIONS IN THIS MANUAL ARE BELIEVED TO BE ACCURATE BUT ARE PRESENTED WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. USERS MUST TAKE FULL RESPONSIBILITY FOR THEIR APPLICATION OF ANY PRODUCTS.

THE SOFTWARE LICENSE AND LIMITED WARRANTY FOR THE ACCOMPANYING PRODUCT ARE SET FORTH IN THE INFORMATION PACKET THAT SHIPPED WITH THE PRODUCT AND ARE INCORPORATED HEREIN BY THIS REFERENCE. IF YOU ARE UNABLE TO LOCATE THE SOFTWARE LICENSE OR LIMITED WARRANTY, CONTACT YOUR CISCO REPRESENTATIVE FOR A COPY.

The Cisco implementation of TCP header compression is an adaptation of a program developed by the University of California, Berkeley (UCB) as part of UCB's public domain version of the UNIX operating system. All rights reserved. Copyright © 1981, Regents of the University of California.

NOTWITHSTANDING ANY OTHER WARRANTY HEREIN, ALL DOCUMENT FILES AND SOFTWARE OF THESE SUPPLIERS ARE PROVIDED “AS IS" WITH ALL FAULTS. CISCO AND THE ABOVE-NAMED SUPPLIERS DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THOSE OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OR ARISING FROM A COURSE OF DEALING, USAGE, OR TRADE PRACTICE.

IN NO EVENT SHALL CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, LOST PROFITS OR LOSS OR DAMAGE TO DATA ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THIS MANUAL, EVEN IF CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

Any Internet Protocol (IP) addresses and phone numbers used in this document are not intended to be actual addresses and phone numbers. Any examples, command display output, network topology diagrams, and other figures included in the document are shown for illustrative purposes only. Any use of actual IP addresses or phone numbers in illustrative content is unintentional and coincidental.

All printed copies and duplicate soft copies of this document are considered uncontrolled. See the current online version for the latest version.

Cisco has more than 200 offices worldwide. Addresses and phone numbers are listed on the Cisco website at www.cisco.com/go/offices.

Cisco and the Cisco logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Cisco and/or its affiliates in the U.S. and other countries. To view a list of Cisco trademarks, go to this URL: www.cisco.com go trademarks. Third-party trademarks mentioned are the property of their respective owners. The use of the word partner does not imply a partnership relationship between Cisco and any other company. (1721R)

© 2017-2018 Cisco Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.

CONTENTS

Preface

This preface includes the following sections:

Audience

This guide is intended primarily for data center administrators with responsibilities and expertise in one or more of the following:

- Server administration
- Storage administration
- Network administration
- Network security

Conventions

Text Type	Indication
GUI elements	GUI elements such as tab titles, area names, and field labels appear in **this font**. Main titles such as window, dialog box, and wizard titles appear in **this font**.
Document titles	Document titles appear in *this font*.
TUI elements	In a Text-based User Interface, text the system displays appears in `this font`.
System output	Terminal sessions and information that the system displays appear in `this font`.
CLI commands	CLI command keywords appear in **this font**. Variables in a CLI command appear in *this font*.

Text Type	Indication
[ ]	Elements in square brackets are optional.
{x | y | z}	Required alternative keywords are grouped in braces and separated by vertical bars.
[x | y | z]	Optional alternative keywords are grouped in brackets and separated by vertical bars.
string	A nonquoted set of characters. Do not use quotation marks around the string or the string will include the quotation marks.
< >	Nonprinting characters such as passwords are in angle brackets.
[ ]	Default responses to system prompts are in square brackets.
!, #	An exclamation point (!) or a pound sign (#) at the beginning of a line of code indicates a comment line.

Note Means *reader take note*. Notes contain helpful suggestions or references to material not covered in the document.

Tip Means *the following information will help you solve a problem*. The tips information might not be troubleshooting or even an action, but could be useful information, similar to a Timesaver.

Timesaver Means *the described action saves time*. You can save time by performing the action described in the paragraph.

Caution Means *reader be careful*. In this situation, you might perform an action that could result in equipment damage or loss of data.

Warning IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

This warning symbol means danger. You are in a situation that could cause bodily injury. Before you work on any equipment, be aware of the hazards involved with electrical circuitry and be familiar with standard practices for preventing accidents. Use the statement number provided at the end of each warning to locate its translation in the translated safety warnings that accompanied this device.

SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS

Related Cisco UCS Documentation

Documentation Roadmaps

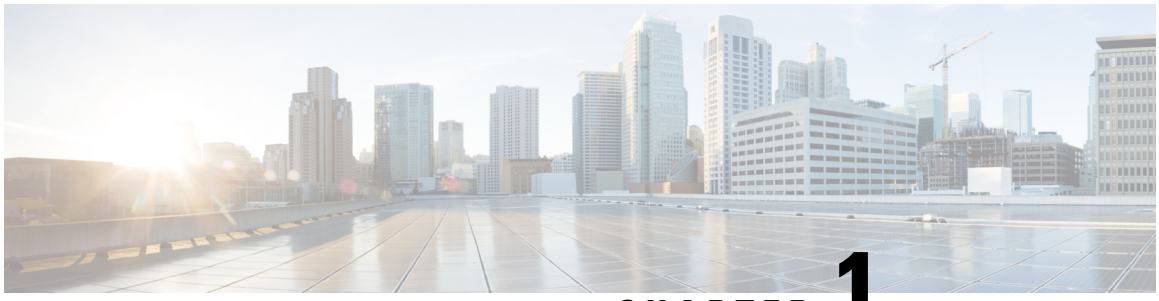
For a complete list of all B-Series documentation, see the *Cisco UCS B-Series Servers Documentation Roadmap* available at the following URL: https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/overview/guide/UCS_roadmap.html

For a complete list of all C-Series documentation, see the *Cisco UCS C-Series Servers Documentation Roadmap* available at the following URL: https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/overview/guide/ucs_rack_roadmap.html.

For information on supported firmware versions and supported UCS Manager versions for the rack servers that are integrated with the UCS Manager for management, refer to Release Bundle Contents for Cisco UCS Software.

Other Documentation Resources

Follow Cisco UCS Docs on Twitter to receive document update notifications.



CHAPTER 1

Overview

This chapter includes the following sections:

Overview of the Cisco UCS C-Series Rack-Mount Servers

The Cisco UCS C-Series rack-mount servers include the following models:

- Cisco UCS C220 M5 Rack-Mount Server
- Cisco UCS C240 M5 Rack-Mount Server
- Cisco UCS C480 M5 Rack-Mount Server

Note To determine which Cisco UCS C-Series rack-mount servers are supported by this firmware release, see the associated *Release Notes*. The C-Series release notes are available at the following URL: http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps10739/prod_release_notes_list.html

Overview of the Server Software

The Cisco UCS C-Series Rack-Mount Server ships with the Cisco IMC firmware.

Cisco IMC Firmware

Cisco IMC is a separate management module built into the motherboard. A dedicated ARM-based processor, separate from the main server CPU, runs the Cisco IMC firmware. The system ships with a running version of the Cisco IMC firmware. You can update the Cisco IMC firmware, but no initial installation is needed.

Server OS

The Cisco UCS C-Series rack servers support operating systems such as Windows, Linux, Oracle and so on. For more information on supported operating systems, see the *Hardware and Software Interoperability for Standalone C-series servers* at http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps10477/prod_technical_reference_list.html. You can use Cisco IMC to install an OS on the server using the KVM console and vMedia.

Note You can access the available OS installation documentation from the *Cisco UCS C-Series Servers Documentation Roadmap* at http://www.cisco.com/go/unifiedcomputing/c-series-doc.

Cisco Integrated Management Controller

The Cisco IMC is the management service for the C-Series servers. Cisco IMC runs within the server.

Note The Cisco IMC management service is used only when the server is operating in Standalone Mode. If your C-Series server is integrated into a UCS system, you must manage it using UCS Manager. For information about using UCS Manager, see the configuration guides listed in the *Cisco UCS B-Series Servers Documentation Roadmap* at http://www.cisco.com/go/unifiedcomputing/b-series-doc.

Management Interfaces

You can use a web-based GUI or SSH-based CLI or an XML-based API to access, configure, administer, and monitor the server. Almost all tasks can be performed in either interface, and the results of tasks performed in one interface are displayed in another. However, you cannot do the following:

- Use Cisco IMC GUI to invoke Cisco IMC CLI
- View a command that has been invoked through Cisco IMC CLI in Cisco IMC GUI
- Generate Cisco IMC CLI output from Cisco IMC GUI

Tasks You Can Perform in Cisco IMC

You can use Cisco IMC to perform the following chassis management tasks:

- Power on, power off, power cycle, reset and shut down the server
- Toggle the locator LED
- Configure the server boot order
- View server properties and sensors
- Manage remote presence
- Create and manage local user accounts, and enable remote user authentication through Active Directory
- Configure network-related settings, including NIC properties, IPv4, VLANs, and network security
- Configure communication services, including HTTP, SSH, IPMI Over LAN, and SNMP

- Manage certificates
- Configure platform event filters
- Update Cisco IMC firmware
- Monitor faults, alarms, and server status
- Set time zone and view local time
- Install and activate Cisco IMC firmware
- Install and activate BIOS firmware
- Install and activate CMC firmware

You can use Cisco IMC to perform the following server management tasks:

- Manage remote presence
- Create and manage local user accounts, and enable remote user authentication through Active Directory
- Configure network-related settings, including NIC properties, IPv4, VLANs, and network security
- Configure communication services, including HTTP, SSH, IPMI Over LAN, and SNMP
- Manage certificates
- Configure platform event filters
- Update Cisco IMC firmware
- Monitor faults, alarms, and server status
- Set time zone and view local time

No Operating System or Application Provisioning or Management

Cisco IMC provisions servers, and as a result, exists below the operating system on a server. Therefore, you cannot use it to provision or manage operating systems or applications on servers. For example, you cannot do the following:

- Deploy an OS, such as Windows or Linux
- Deploy patches for software, such as an OS or an application
- Install base software components, such as anti-virus software, monitoring agents, or backup clients
- Install software applications, such as databases, application server software, or web servers
- Perform operator actions, including restarting an Oracle database, restarting printer queues, or handling non-Cisco IMC user accounts
- Configure or manage external storage on the SAN or NAS storage

Overview of the Cisco IMC User Interface

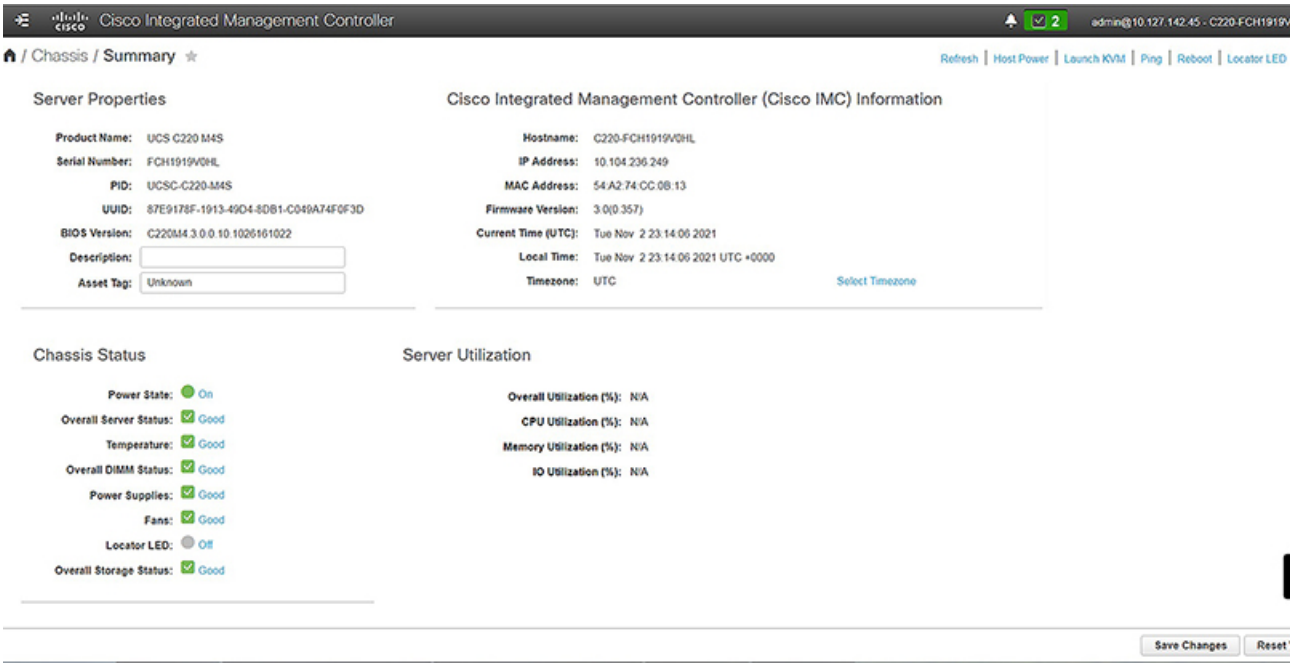
The Cisco IMC user interface is a web-based management interface for Cisco C-Series servers. The web user interface is developed using HTML5 with the eXtensible Widget Framework (XWT) framework. You can launch the user interface and manage the server from any remote host that meets the following minimum requirements:

- Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 or higher, Mozilla Firefox 3.0 or higher
- Microsoft Windows 7, Microsoft Windows XP, Microsoft Windows Vista, Apple Mac OS X v10.6, Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.0 or higher operating systems
- Transport Layer Security (TLS) version 1.2

Note In case you lose or forget the password that you use to log in to Cisco IMC, see the password recovery instructions in the Cisco UCS C-Series server installation and service guide for your server. This guide is available from the *Cisco UCS C-Series Servers Documentation Roadmap* at http://www.cisco.com/go/unifiedcomputing/c-series-doc.

Cisco IMC Home Page

When you first log into Cisco IMC GUI, the user interface looks similar to the following illustration:



Navigation and Work Panes

The Cisco Integrated Management Controller GUI comprises the **Navigation** pane on the left hand side of the screen and the **Work** pane on the right hand side of the screen. Clicking links on the **Chassis**, **Compute**, **Networking**, **Storage** or **Admin** menu in the **Navigation** pane displays the associated tabs in the pane on the right.

The **Navigation** pane header displays action buttons that allow you to view the navigation map of the entire GUI, view the index, or select a favorite work pane to go to, directly. The **Pin** icon prevents the **Navigation** pane from sliding in once the **Work** pane displays.

The **Favorite** icon is a star shaped button which allows you to make any specific work pane in the application as your favorite. To do this, navigate to the work pane of your choice and click the **Favorite** icon. To access this work pane directly from anywhere else in the application, click the **Favorite** icon again.

The GUI header displays information about the overall status of the chassis and user login information.

Note **Change Password** option is not available when you login as an admin, you can only change the password of the configured users with read-only user privileges.

When you change your password you will be logged out of Cisco IMC.

The GUI header also displays the total number of faults (indicated in green or red), with a **Bell** icon next to it. However, clicking this icon displays the summary of only the critical and major faults of various components. To view all the faults, click the **View All** button to display the **Fault Summary** pane.

Note User interface options may vary depending on the server.

The **Navigation** pane has the following menus:

- **Chassis** Menu
- **Compute** Menu
- **Networking** Menu
- **Storage** Menu
- **Admin** Menu

Chassis Menu

Each node in the **Chassis** menu leads to one or more tabs that display in the **Work** pane. These tabs provides access to the following information:

Chassis Menu Node Name	Work Pane Tabs Provide Information About...
Summary	Server properties, Chassis status, Cisco IMC information, and Server Utilization.
Inventory	CPU, memory, PCI adapters, power supplies, cisco VIC adapters, network adapters, storage, SAS expander, and TPM.

Chassis Menu Node Name	Work Pane Tabs Provide Information About...
Sensors	Power supply, fan, temperature, voltage, current, LED readings, and storage.
Power Management	Power cap configuration and power monitoring. **Note** This option is available only on some UCS C-Series servers.
Faults and Logs	Fault summary, fault history, system event log, Cisco IMC logs, and logging controls.

Compute Menu

The **Compute** menu contains information about the server, and the following information is displayed in the **Work** pane.

Compute Menu Node Name	Work Pane Tabs Provide Information About...
Remote Management	KVM, virtual media, and Serial over LAN settings.
BIOS	The installed BIOS firmware version and the server boot order.
Troubleshooting	Bootstrap processing, Crash recording, and a player to view the last saved bootstrap process.
Power Policies	Power restore policy settings.
PID Catalog	CPU, memory, PCI adapters, and the HDD details.

Networking Menu

Each node in the **Networking** menu leads to one or more tabs that display in the **Work** pane. These tabs provides access to the following information:

Networking Menu Node Name	Work Pane Tabs Provide Information About...
General	Adapter card properties, firmware, external ethernet interfaces, and actions to export or import configurations, and reset status.
vNICs	Host ethernet interfaces information such as name, CDN, MAC address, MTU and individual vNIC properties.
vHBAs	Host fibre channel interfaces information such as name, WWPN, WWNN, boot, uplink, port profile, channel number, and individual vHBA properties.

Storage Menu

Each node in the **Storage** menu corresponds to the LSI MegaRAID controllers or Host Bus Adapters (HBA) that are installed in theCisco UCS C-Series Rack-Mount Servers. Each node leads to one or more tabs that display in the **Work** pane and provide information about the installed controllers.

Storage Menu Node Name	Work Pane Tabs Provide Information About...
Controller Info	General information about the selected LSI MegaRAID controller or HBA.
Physical Drive Info	General drive information, identification information, and drive statusl
Virtual Drive Info	General drive information, RAID information, and physical drive information.
Battery Backup Unit	Backup battery information for the selected MegaRAID controller.
Storage Log	Storage messages.

Admin Menu

Each node in the **Admin** menu leads to one or more tabs that display in the **Work** pane. These tabs provides access to the following information:

Admin Menu Node Name	Work Pane Tabs Provide Information About...
User Management	Locally-defined user accounts, Active Directory settings, and current user session information.
Networking	NIC, IPv4, IPv6, VLAN, and LOM properties, along with network security settings.
Communication Services	HTTP, SSH, XML API, IPMI over LAN, and SNMP settings.
Certificate Management	Security certificate information and management.
Firmware Management	Cisco IMC and BIOS firmware information and management.
Utilities	Technical support data collection, system configuration import and export options, and restore factory defaults settings.
Device Connector	Starship management and network settings. **Note** This option is available only on some C-Series servers.

Toolbar

The toolbar displays above the **Work** pane.

Button Name	Description
Refresh	Refreshes the current page.
Host Power	Displays the drop-down menu for you to choose power options.
Launch KVM	Displays the drop-down menu to launch the Java based or HTML based KVM console.

Button Name	Description
Ping	Launches the **Ping Details** pop-up window.
Reboot	Enables you to reboot Cisco IMC.
Locator LED	Allows you to turn on or turn off the locator LED.

Cisco Integrated Management Controller Online Help Overview

The GUI for the Cisco Integrated Management Controller (Cisco IMC) software is divided into two main sections, a **Navigation** pane on the left and a **Work** pane on the right.

This help system describes the fields on each Cisco IMC GUI page and in each dialog box.

To access the page help, do one of the following:

- In a particular tab in the Cisco IMC GUI, click the **Help** icon in the toolbar above the **Work** pane.
- In a dialog box, click the **Help** button in that dialog box.

Note For a complete list of all C-Series documentation, see the *Cisco UCS C-Series Servers Documentation Roadmap* available at the following URL: http://www.cisco.com/go/unifiedcomputing/c-series-doc.

Logging into Cisco IMC

Procedure

Step 1 In your web browser, type or select the web link for Cisco IMC.

Step 2 If a security dialog box displays, do the following:

a) (Optional) Check the check box to accept all content from Cisco.

b) Click **Yes** to accept the certificate and continue.

Step 3 In the log in window, enter your username and password.

Tip When logging in for the first time to an unconfigured system, use **admin** as the username and **password** as the password.

The following situations occur when you login to the Web UI for the first time:

- You cannot perform any operation until you change default admin credentials on the Cisco IMC Web UI.
- You cannot close or cancel the password change pop-up window and opening it in a tab or refreshing the browser page will continue to display the pop-up window. This pop-up window appears when you login after a factory reset.
- You cannot choose the word 'password' as your new password. If this creates problems for any scripts you may be running, you could change it to password by logging back into the user management options, but this is ENTIRELY at your own risk. It is not recommended by Cisco.

Step 4 Click **Log In**.

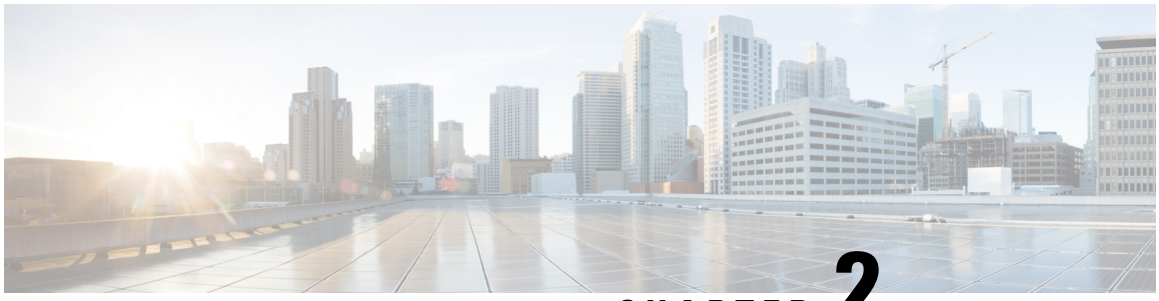
Logging out of Cisco IMC

Procedure

Step 1 In the upper right of Cisco IMC, click **Log Out**.

Logging out returns you to the Cisco IMC log in page.

Step 2 (Optional) Log back in or close your web browser.



CHAPTER 2

Installing the Server OS

This chapter includes the following sections:

OS Installation Methods

C-Series servers support several operating systems. Regardless of the OS being installed, you can install it on your server using one of the following tools:

- KVM console
- PXE installation server

KVM Console

The KVM console is an interface accessible from Cisco IMC that emulates a direct keyboard, video, and mouse (KVM) connection to the server. The KVM console allows you to connect to the server from a remote location.

Instead of using CD/DVD or floppy drives physically connected to the server, the KVM console uses virtual media, which are actual disk drives or disk image files that are mapped to virtual CD/DVD or floppy drives. You can map any of the following to a virtual drive:

- CD/DVD or floppy drive on your computer
- Disk image files (ISO or IMG files) on your computer
- USB flash drive on your computer
- CD/DVD or floppy drive on the network
- Disk image files (ISO or IMG files) on the network
- USB flash drive on the network

You can use the KVM console to install an OS on the server.

Note When launching the KVM Console from Internet Explorer 6 SP1 on Windows Server 2003, the browser will report that it cannot download a required file. If this occurs, click the browser Tools menu and select Internet Options. Click the Advanced tab and, in the Security section, uncheck the checkbox for "Do not save encrypted pages to disk." Launch the KVM Console again.

Installing an OS Using the KVM Console

Note This procedure describes only the basic installation steps. Detailed guides for installing Linux, VMware, and Windows can be found at this URL: http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps10493/products_installation_and_configuration_guides_list.html.

Before you begin

- Locate the OS installation disk or disk image file.
- You must log in as a user with admin privileges to install an OS.

Procedure

Step 1 Load the OS installation disk into your CD/DVD drive, or copy the disk image files to your computer.

Step 2 If Cisco IMC is not open, log in.

Step 3 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Compute** menu.

Step 4 In the **Compute** menu, select a server.

Step 5 In the work pane, click the **Remote Management** tab.

Step 6 In the **Remote Management** pane, click the **Virtual KVM** tab.

Step 7 In the **Actions** area, click **Launch KVM Console**.

The **KVM Console** opens in a separate window.

Step 8 From the KVM console, click the **VM** tab.

Step 9 In the **VM** tab, map the virtual media using either of the following methods:

- Check the **Mapped** check box for the CD/DVD drive containing the OS installation disk.
- Click **Add Image**, navigate to and select the OS installation disk image, click **Open** to mount the disk image, and then check the **Mapped** check box for the mounted disk image.

Note You must keep the **VM** tab open during the OS installation process. Closing the tab unmaps all virtual media.

Step 10 Reboot the server and select the virtual CD/DVD drive as the boot device.

When the server reboots, it begins the installation process from the virtual CD/DVD drive. Refer to the installation guide for the OS being installed to guide you through the rest of the installation process.

What to do next

After the OS installation is complete, reset the LAN boot order to its original setting. Always follow your OS vendors recommended configuration, including software interoperability and driver compatibility. For more information on driver recommendations and installation, follow the Cisco UCS Hardware Compatibility list here:

https://ucshcltool.cloudapps.cisco.com/public/

PXE Installation Servers

A Preboot Execution Environment (PXE) installation server allows a client to boot and install an OS from a remote location. To use this method, a PXE environment must be configured and available on your VLAN, typically a dedicated provisioning VLAN. Additionally, the server must be set to boot from the network. When the server boots, it sends a PXE request across the network. The PXE installation server acknowledges the request, and starts a sequence of events that installs the OS on the server.

PXE servers can use installation disks, disk images, or scripts to install an OS. Proprietary disk images can also be used to install an OS, additional components, or applications.

Note PXE installation is an efficient method for installing an OS on a large number of servers. However, considering that this method requires setting up a PXE environment, it might be easier to use another installation method.

Installing an OS Using a PXE Installation Server

Before you begin

- Verify that the server can be reached over a VLAN.
- You must log in as a user with admin privileges to install an OS.

Procedure

Step 1 Set the boot order to **PXE** first.

Step 2 Reboot the server.

If a PXE install server is available on the VLAN, the installation process begins when the server reboots. PXE installations are typically automated and require no additional user input. Refer to the installation guide for the OS being installed to guide you through the rest of the installation process.

What to do next

After the OS installation is complete, reset the LAN boot order to its original setting. Always follow your OS vendors recommended configuration, including software interoperability and driver compatibility. For more information on driver recommendations and installation, follow the Cisco UCS Hardware Compatibility list here:

https://ucshcltool.cloudapps.cisco.com/public/

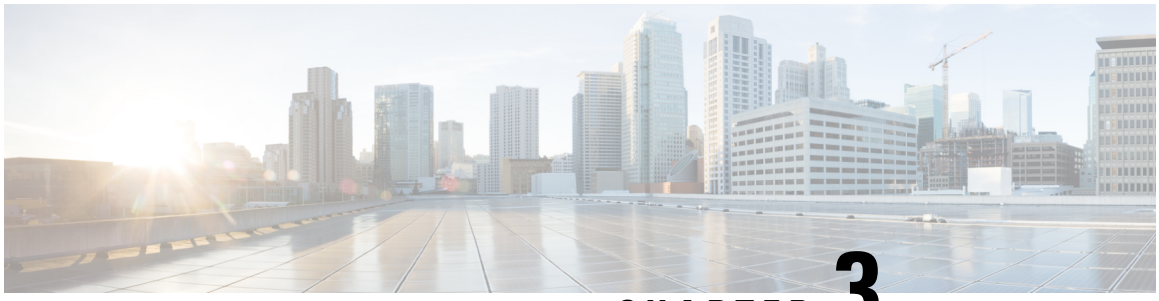
Booting an Operating System from a USB Port

All Cisco UCS C-series servers support booting an operating system from any USB port on the server. However, there are a few guidelines that you must keep in mind, prior to booting an OS from a USB port.

- To maintain the boot order configuration, it is recommended that you use an internal USB port for booting an OS.
- The USB port must be enabled prior to booting an OS from it.

  By default, the USB ports are enabled. If you have disabled a USB port, you must enable it prior to booting an OS from it. For information on enabling a disabled USB ports, see topic *Enabling or Disabling the Internal USB Port* in the server-specific installation and service guide available at the following link:

  http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps10493/prod_installation_guides_list.html.
- After you boot the OS from the USB port, you must set the second-level boot order so that the server boots from that USB source every time.



CHAPTER 3

Managing Chassis

This chapter includes the following sections:

Chassis Summary

Viewing Chassis Summary

By default when you log on to the Cisco UCS C-Series rack-mount server, the **Summary** pane of the Chassis is displayed in the Web UI. You can also view the Chassis summary when in another tab or working area, by completing the following steps:

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Summary**.

Step 3 In the **Server Properties** area of the **Chassis Summary** pane, review the following information:

Name	Description
Product Name field	The model name of the server.
Serial Number field	The serial number for the server.
PID field	The product ID.
UUID field	The UUID assigned to the server.
BIOS version field	The version of the BIOS running on the server.
Description field	A user-defined description for the server.
Asset Tag field	A user-defined tag for the server. By default, the asset tag for a new server displays **Unknown**.

Step 4 In the **Cisco IMC Information** area of the **Chassis Summary** pane, review the following information:

Name	Description
Hostname field	A user-defined hostname for the Cisco IMC. By default, the hostname appears in CXXX-YYYYYY format, where XXX is the model number and YYYYYY is the serial number of the server.
IP Address field	The IP address for the Cisco IMC.
MAC Address field	The MAC address assigned to the active network interface to the Cisco IMC.
Firmware Version field	The current Cisco IMC firmware version.
Current Time field	The current date and time according to the Cisco IMC clock. **Note** Cisco IMC gets the current date and time from the server BIOS when the NTP is disabled. When NTP is enabled, Cisco IMC gets the current time and date from the NTP server. To change this information, reboot the server and press **F2** when prompted to access the BIOS configuration menu. Then change the date or time using the options on the main BIOS configuration tab.
Local Time field	The local time of the region according to the chosen time zone.
Timezone field	Allows you to select a time zone by clicking on the **Select Timezone** option. In the **Select Timezone** pop-up screen, mouse over the map and click on the location to select your time zone or choose your time zone from the **Timezone** drop-down menu.

Step 5 In the **Chassis Status** area of the **Chassis Summary** pane, review the following information:

Name	Description
Power State field	The current power state.
Overall Server Status field	The overall status of the server. This can be one of the following: • **Memory Test In Progress**—The server is performing a self-test of the installed memory. This condition normally occurs during the boot process. • **Good** • **Moderate Fault** • **Severe Fault**

Name	Description
Temperature field	The temperature status. This can be one of the following: • **Good** • **Fault** • **Severe Fault** You can click the link in this field to view more temperature information.
Overall DIMM Status field	The overall status of the memory modules. This can be one of the following: • **Good** • **Fault** • **Severe Fault** You can click the link in this field to view detailed status information.
Power Supplies field	The overall status of the power supplies. This can be one of the following: • **Good** • **Fault** • **Severe Fault** You can click the link in this field to view detailed status information.
Fans field	The overall status of the power supplies. This can be one of the following: • **Good** • **Fault** • **Severe Fault** You can click the link in this field to view detailed status information.
Locator LED field	Whether the locator LEDs are on or off.
Front Locator LED field	Whether the front panel locator LED on the chassis is on or off. **Note** This option is available only on some UCS C-Series servers.
Overall Storage Status field	The overall status of all controllers. This can be one of the following: • **Good** • **Moderate Fault** • **Severe Fault**

Step 6 In the **Server Utilization** area of the **Chassis Summary** pane, review the following information in a graphical representation:

Name	Description
Overall Utilization (%) field	The overall realtime utilization of CPU, memory, and IO (input and output) of the system in percentage.
CPU Utilization (%) field	The CPU or computation utilization of the system on all the available CPUs in percentage.
Memory Utilization (%) field	The memory utilization of the system on all the available memory (DIMM) channels in percentage.
IO Utilization (%) field	The IO resource utilization of the system in percentage.

Chassis Inventory

Viewing Power Supply Properties

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Inventory**.

Step 3 In the **Inventory** work pane, click the **Power Supplies** tab and review the following information for each power supply:

Name	Description
Device ID column	The identifier for the power supply unit.
Status column	The status of the power supply unit.
Input column	The input into the power supply, in watts.
Output column	The maximum output from the power supply, in watts.
FW Version column	The firmware version for the power supply.
Product ID column	The product identifier for the power supply assigned by the vendor.

Viewing Cisco VIC Adapter Properties

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Inventory**.

Step 3 In the **Inventory** work pane, click the **Cisco VIC Adapters** tab and review the following high level information:

Name	Description
Slot Number column	The PCI slot in which the adapter is installed.
Serial Number column	The serial number for the adapter.
Product ID column	The product ID for the adapter.
Cisco IMC Enabled column	Whether the adapter is able to manage Cisco IMC. This functionality depends on the type of adapter installed and how it is configured. For details, see the hardware installation guide for the type of server you are using.
Description column	Description of the adapter.

Viewing SAS Expander Properties

Before you begin

The server must be powered on, or the properties will not display.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Inventory**.

Step 3 In the **Inventory** work pane, click the **SAS Expander** tab and review the following information:

Name	Description
ID column	The product ID of the expander.
Name column	The name of the expander.
Firmware Version column	The firmware version the expander uses.
Secondary Firmware Version column	The secondary firmware version of the expander.
Hardware Revision column	The hardware version of the expander.

Name	Description
SAS Address column	The SAS address of the expander.
Server Up Link Speed column	Up link speed received with the LSI RAID Controller. **Note** This is available only on some C-Series servers. **Note** You can view up to four speed levels for Server 1 and 2 respectively using the **Filter** icon on the top right hand corner of the **SAS Expander** table. Select the Tick mark next to the speed filter to view the individual speed in the table.

Enabling 6G or 12G Mixed Mode on a SAS Expander

You can enable or disable a 6 gigabyte or 12 gigabyte mixed mode speed support for a card using this option, which is a toggle button.

Note This option is available only on some C-Series servers.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.
Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Inventory**.
Step 3 In the **Inventory** working area, click the **SAS Expander** tab.
Step 4 In the **SAS Expander** working area, click **Enable 6G-12G Mixed Mode**.
Step 5 (Optional) Click **Disable 6g-12G Mixed Mode** to disable the feature.

Viewing Storage Properties

Before you begin

The server must be powered on, or the properties will not display.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.
Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Inventory**.
Step 3 In the **Inventory** work pane, click the **Storage** tab and review the following information:

Name	Description
Controller field	PCIe slot in which the controller drive is located.
PCI Slot field	The name of the PCIe slot in which the controller drive is located.
Product Name field	Name of the controller.
Serial Number field	The serial number of the storage controller.
Firmware Package Build field	The active firmware package version number.
Product ID field	Product ID of the controller.
Battery Status field	Status of the battery.
Cache Memory Size field	The size of the cache memory, in megabytes.
Health field	The health of the controller firmware status.

Viewing Network Adapter Properties

Before you begin

The server must be powered on, or the properties will not display.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Inventory**.

Step 3 In the **Inventory** work pane, click the **Network Adapters** tab and review the following information:

Name	Description
Slot column	The slot in which the adapter is installed.
Product Name column	The product name for the adapter.
Number of Interfaces column	The number of interfaces for the adapter.
External Ethernet Interfaces	**ID**—The ID for the external ethernet interface. **MAC Address**—The MAC address for the external ethernet interface.

Viewing GPU Inventory

The GPU Inventory option is available only on some C-Series servers.

Before you begin

The server must be powered on, or the properties will not display.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Inventory**.

Step 3 In the **Inventory** work pane, click the **GPU Inventory** tab and review the following information:

Name	Description
Slot	Slot in which the GPU is installed.
Product Name	Name of the GPU.
Number of GPUs	Number of GPUs present in the slot.

Viewing PCI Switch Info

Before you begin

The server must be powered on, or the properties will not display.

Procedure

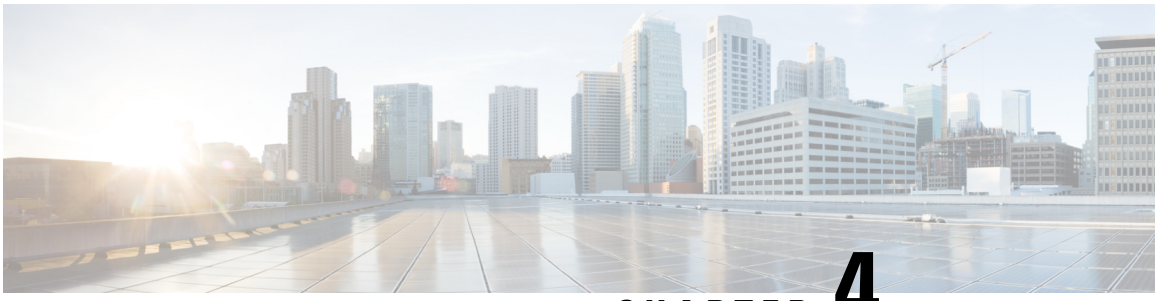
Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Inventory**.

Step 3 In the **Inventory** work pane, click the **PCI Switch Info** tab and review the following information:

Name	Description
Controller column	PCI Slot in which the controller is present.
Controller Type column	Type of PCI switch present in the slot.
Product Name column	Name of the PCI switch.
Manufacturer column	Manufacture of the PCI switch.
Vendor ID column	The switch ID assigned by the vendor.
Sub Vendor ID column	The secondary switch ID assigned by the vendor.
Device ID column	The device ID assigned by the vendor.

Name	Description
Sub Device ID column	The secondary device ID assigned by the vendor.



CHAPTER 4

Managing the Server

This chapter includes the following sections:

Server Boot Order

Using Cisco IMC, you can configure the order in which the server attempts to boot from available boot device types. In the legacy boot order configuration, Cisco IMC allows you to reorder the device types but not the devices within the device types. With the precision boot order configuration, you can have a linear ordering of the devices. In the web UI or CLI you can change the boot order and boot mode, add multiple devices under each device types, rearrange the boot order, set parameters for each device type.

When you change the boot order configuration, Cisco IMC sends the configured boot order to BIOS the next time that server is rebooted. To implement the new boot order, reboot the server after you make the configuration change. The new boot order takes effect on any subsequent reboot. The configured boot order remains until the configuration is changed again in Cisco IMC or in the BIOS setup.

Note The actual boot order differs from the configured boot order if either of the following conditions occur:

- BIOS encounters issues while trying to boot using the configured boot order.
- A user changes the boot order directly through BIOS.
- BIOS appends devices that are seen by the host but are not configured from the user.

Note When you create a new policy using the configure boot order feature, BIOS tries to map this new policy to the devices in the system. It displays the actual device name and the policy name to which it is mapped in the **Actual Boot Order** area. If BIOS cannot map any device to a particular policy in Cisco IMC, the actual device name is stated as **NonPolicyTarget** in the **Actual Boot Order** area.

Note When you upgrade Cisco IMC to the latest version 2.0(x) for the first time, the legacy boot order is migrated to the precision boot order. During this process, previous boot order configuration is erased and all device types configured before updating to 2.0 version are converted to corresponding precision boot device types and some dummy devices are created for the same device types. you can view these devices in the **Configured Boot Order** area in the web UI. To view these devices in the CLI, enter **show boot-device** command. During this the server's actual boot order is retained and it can be viewed under actual boot order option in web UI and CLI.

When you downgrade Cisco IMC prior to 2.0(x) verison the server's last legacy boot order is retained, and the same can be viewed under **Actual Boot Order** area. For example:

- If you configured the server in a legacy boot order in 2.0(x) version, upon downgrade a legacy boot order configuration is retained.
- If you configured the server in a precision boot order in 2.0(x), upon downgrade the last configured legacy boot order is retained.

Important

- Boot order configuration prior to 2.0(x) is referred as legacy boot order. If your running version is 2.0(x), then you cannot configure legacy boot order through web UI, but you can configure through CLI and XML API. In the CLI, you can configure it by using **set boot-order HDD,PXE** command. Even though, you can configure legacy boot order through CLI or XML API, in the web UI this configured boot order is not displayed.
- Legacy and precision boot order features are mutually exclusive. You can configure either legacy or precision boot order. If you configure legacy boot order, it disables all the precision boot devices configured. If you configure precision boot order, then it erases legacy boot order configuration.

Configuring the Precision Boot Order

Before you begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to configure server the boot order.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Compute** menu.

Step 2 In the **BIOS** tab, click the **Configure Boot Order** tab.

Step 3 In the **BIOS Properties** area, click **Configure Boot Order**.

A dialog box with boot order instructions appears.

Step 4 In the **Configure Boot Order** dialog box, update the following properties:

Name	Description
Add Boot Device table	The server boot options. You can add one or more of the following boot device and set parameters of the selected device: **Note** The following list shows all possible boot devices. The actual devices displayed depend on the type of C-Series server that you are using. • **Add Local HDD** • **Add PXE Boot** • **Add SAN Boot** • **Add iSCSI Boot** • **Add SD Card** **Note** This option is available only on some UCS C-Series servers. • **Add USB** • **Add Virtual Media** • **Add PCH Storage** • **Add UEFI SHELL** • **Add NVME** • **Add Local CDD**
Enable/Disable button	The visibility of a device by BIOS. The state can be one of the following: • **Enabled**— The device is visible to BIOS in a boot order configuration. • **Disabled**— The device is not visible to BIOS in a boot order configuration.
Modify button	Modifies the attributes of the selected devices.
Delete button	Deletes the selected bootable device from the **Boot Order** table.
Clone button	Copies an existing device setting to a new device.
Re-Apply button	Reapplies the boot order configuration to BIOS when the last configured boot order source displays as BIOS.
Move Up button	Moves the selected device type to a higher priority in the **Boot Order** table.

Name	Description
Move Down button	Moves the selected device type to a lower priority in the **Boot Order** table.
Boot Order table	Displays the device types from which this server can boot, in the order in which the boot is attempted.
Save Changes button	Saves the changes to the configured boot order or reapplies a previously configured boot order. Cisco IMC sends the configured boot order to BIOS the next time that server is rebooted.
Reset Values button	Resets the values of the configured boot order.
Close button	Closes the dialog box without saving any changes or reapplying the existing configuration. If you choose this option, the actual boot order does not change the next time that server is rebooted.

Step 5 Click **Save Changes**.

Additional device types might be appended to the actual boot order, depending on what devices you have connected to your server.

What to do next

Reboot the server to boot with your new boot order.

Managing a Boot Device

Before you begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to add device type to the server boot order.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Compute** menu.

Step 2 In the **BIOS** tab, click the **Configure Boot Order** tab.

Step 3 In the **BIOS Properties** area, click **Configure Boot Order**.

A dialog box with boot order instructions appears.

Step 4 In the **Configure Boot Order** dialog box, from the **Add Boot Device** table, choose the device that you want add to the boot order.

To add the local HDD device, click **Add Local HDD**, and update the following parameters:

Name	Description
Name field	The name of the device. **Note** Once created, you cannot rename the device.
State drop-down list	The visibility of the device by BIOS. This can be one of the following: • **Enabled**—The device is visible to BIOS in a boot order configuration. • **Disabled**—The device is not visible to BIOS in a boot configuration.
Order field	The order of the device in the available list of devices. Enter between 1 and n, where n is the number of devices.
Slot field	The slot in which the device is installed. Enter the slot number from the available range.
Add Device button	Adds the device to the **Boot Order** table.
Cancel button	Closes the dialog box without saving any changes made while the dialog box was open.

To add the PXE device, click **Add PXE**, and update the following parameters:

Name	Description
Name field	The name of the device. This name cannot be changed after the device has been created.
State drop-down list	The visibility of the device by BIOS. The state can be one of the following: • **Enabled**—The device is visible to BIOS in a boot order configuration. • **Disabled**—The device is not visible to BIOS in a boot order configuration.
Order field	The order of the device in the available list of devices. Enter between 1 and n, where n is the number of devices.
MAC Address	MAC address of the server. **Note** This option is available only on some C-Series servers.
Slot field	The slot in which the device is installed. Enter the slot number from the available range.
Port field	The port of the slot in which the device is present. Enter a number between 0 and 255.

To add the SAN boot device, click **Add SAN Boot**, and update the following parameters:

Name	Description
Name field	The name of the device. This name cannot be changed after the device has been created.
State drop-down list	The visibility of the device by BIOS. The state can be one of the following: • **Enabled**—The device is visible to BIOS in a boot order configuration. • **Disabled**—The device is not visible to BIOS in a boot order configuration.
Order field	The order of the device in the available list of devices. Enter between 1 and n, where n is the number of devices.
Slot field	The slot in which the device is installed. Enter the slot number from the available range.
LUN field	Logical unit in a slot where the device is present. Enter a number between 0 and 255.
Save Changes button	Adds the device to the **Boot Order** table, and saves the changes.
Cancel button	Closes the dialog box without saving any changes made while the dialog box was open.

To add the iSCSI boot device, click **Add iSCSI Boot**, and update the following parameters:

Name	Description
Name field	The name of the device. This name cannot be changed after the device has been created.
State drop-down list	The visibility of the device by BIOS. The state can be one of the following: • **Enabled**—The device is visible to BIOS in a boot order configuration. • **Disabled**—The device is not visible to BIOS in a boot order configuration.
Order field	The order of the device in the available list of devices. Enter between 1 and n, where n is the number of devices.
Slot field	The slot in which the device is installed. Enter the slot number from the available range.

Name	Description
Port field	The port of the slot in which the device is present. Enter a number between 0 and 255. **Note** In case of a VIC card, use a vNIC instance instead of the port number.
Save Changes button	Adds the device to the **Boot Order** table, and saves the changes.
Cancel button	Closes the dialog box without saving any changes made while the dialog box was open.

To add the SD card, click **Add SD Card**, and update the following parameters:

Note This option is available only on some UCS C-Series servers.

Name	Description
Name field	The name of the device. This name cannot be changed after the device has been created.
State drop-down list	The visibility of the device by BIOS. This can be one of the following: • **Enabled**—The device is visible to BIOS in a boot order configuration. • **Disabled**—The device is not visible to BIOS in a boot configuration.
Order field	The order of the device in the available list of devices. Enter between 1 and n, where n is the number of devices.
Save Changes button	Adds the device to the **Boot Order** table.
Cancel button	Closes the dialog box without saving any changes made while the dialog box was open.

To add the USB device, click **Add USB**, and update the following parameters:

Name	Description
Name field	The name of the device. This name cannot be changed after the device has been created.
Sub Type drop-down list	The subdevice type under a certain device type. This can be one of the following: • **CD** • **FDD** • **HDD**

Name	Description
State drop-down list	The visibility of the device by BIOS. This can be one of the following: • **Enabled**—The device is visible to BIOS in a boot order configuration. • **Disabled**—The device is not visible to BIOS in a boot order configuration.
Order field	The order of the device in the available list of devices. Enter between 1 and n, where n is the number of devices.
Save Changes button	Adds the device to the **Boot Order** table.
Cancel button	Closes the dialog box without saving any changes made while the dialog box was open.

To add the virtual media, click **Virtual Media**, and update the following parameters:

Name	Description
Name field	The name of the device. This name cannot be changed after the device has been created.
Sub Type drop-down list	The subdevice type under a certain device type. This could be any one of the following: • **KVM Mapped DVD** • **Cisco IMC Mapped DVD** • **KVM Mapped HDD** • **Cisco IMC Mapped HDD** • **KVM Mapped FDD**
State drop-down list	The visibility of the device by BIOS. The state can be one of the following: • **Enabled**—The device is visible to BIOS in a boot order configuration. • **Disabled**—The device is not visible to BIOS in a boot order configuration.
Order field	The order of the device in the available list of devices. Enter between 1 and n, where n is the number of devices.
Save Changes button	Adds the device to the **Boot Order** table.
Cancel button	Closes the dialog box without saving any changes made while the dialog box was open.

To add the PCH storage device, click **PCH Storage**, and update the following parameters:

Name	Description
Name field	The name of the device. This name cannot be changed after the device has been created.
State drop-down list	The visibility of the device by BIOS. This can be one of the following: • **Enabled**—The device is visible to BIOS in a boot order configuration. • **Disabled**—The device is not visible to BIOS in a boot order configuration.
Order field	The order of the device in the available list of devices. Enter between 1 and n, where n is the number of devices.
LUN field	Logical unit in a slot where the device is present. • Enter a number between 0 and 255 • SATA in AHCI mode—Enter a value between 1 and 10 • SATA in SWRAID mode—Enter 0 for SATA , and enter 1 for SATA **Note** SATA mode is available only on some UCS C-Series servers.
Save Changes button	Adds the device to the **Boot Order** table.
Cancel button	Closes the dialog box without saving any changes made while the dialog box was open.

To add the UEFI shell device, click **Add UEFI Shell**, and update the following parameters:

Name	Description
Name field	The name of the device. This name cannot be changed after the device has been created.
State drop-down list	The visibility of the device by BIOS. The state can be one of the following: • **Enabled**—The device is visible to BIOS in a boot order configuration. • **Disabled**—The device is not visible to BIOS in a boot order configuration.
Order field	The order of the device in the available list of devices. Enter between 1 and n, where n is the number of devices.
Add Device button	Adds the device to the **Boot Order** table.

Name	Description
Cancel button	Closes the dialog box without saving any changes made while the dialog box was open.

Overview to UEFI Secure Boot

You can use Unified Extensible Firmware Interface (UEFI) secure boot to ensure that all the EFI drivers, EFI applications, option ROM or operating systems prior to loading and execution are signed and verified for authenticity and integrity, before you load and execute the operating system. You can enable this option using either web UI or CLI. When you enable UEFI secure boot mode, the boot mode is set to UEFI mode and you cannot modify the configured boot mode until the UEFI boot mode is disabled.

Note If you enable UEFI secure boot on a nonsupported OS, on the next reboot, you cannot boot from that particular OS. If you try to boot from the previous OS, an error is reported and recorded the under system software event in the web UI. You must disable the UEFI secure boot option using Cisco IMC to boot from your previous OS.

Important Also, if you use an unsupported adapter, an error log event in Cisco IMC SEL is recorded. The error messages is displayed that says:

System Software event: Post sensor, System Firmware error. EFI Load Image Security Violation. [0x5302] was asserted .

UEFI secure boot is supported on the following components:

Components	Types
Supported OS	• Windows Server 2012 • Windows Server 2012 R2
Broadcom PCI adapters	• 5709 dual and quad port adapters • 57712 10GBASE-T adapter • 57810 CNA • 57712 SFP port
Intel PCI adapters	• i350 quad port adapter • X520 adapter • X540 adapter • LOM

Components	Types
QLogic PCI adapters	• 8362 dual port adapter • 2672 dual port adapter
Fusion-io	
LSI	• LSI MegaRAID SAS 9240-8i • LSI MegaRAID SAS 9220-8i • LSI MegaRAID SAS 9265CV-8i • LSI MegaRAID SAS 9285CV-8e • LSI MegaRAID SAS 9285CV-8e • LSI MegaRAID SAS 9266-8i • LSI SAS2008-8i mezz • LSI Nytro card • RAID controller for UCS Storage (SLOT-MEZZ) • Host Bus Adapter (HBA)

Enabling UEFI Secure Boot

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Compute** menu.

Step 2 In the work pane, click the **BIOS** tab.

Step 3 In the **BIOS Properties** area of the **Configure Boot Order** tab, check **UEFI Secure Boot** checkbox.

Note If checked, the boot mode is set to UEFI secure boot. You cannot modify the **Configure Boot Mode** until UEFI secure boot option is disabled.

If you enable UEFI secure boot on a nonsupported OS, on the next reboot, you cannot boot from that particular OS. If you try to boot from the previous OS, an error is reported and recorded under the system software event in the web UI. You must disable the UEFI secure boot option by using Cisco IMC to boot from your previous OS.

Step 4 Click **Save Changes**.

What to do next

Reboot the server to have your configuration boot mode settings take place.

Disabling UEFI Secure Boot

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Compute** menu.

Step 2 In the work pane, click the **BIOS** tab.

Step 3 In the **BIOS Properties** area, uncheck the **UEFI Secure Boot** check box.

Step 4 Click **Save Changes**.

What to do next

Reboot the server to have your configuration boot mode settings take place.

Viewing the Actual Server Boot Order

The actual server boot order is the boot order actually used by BIOS when the server last booted. The actual boot order can differ from the boot order configured in Cisco IMC.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Compute** menu.

Step 2 In the **BIOS** tab, click the **Configure Boot Order** tab.

Step 3 In the **BIOS Properties** area, click **Configure Boot Order**.

This area displays the boot order devices configured through Cisco IMC as well as the actual boot order used by the server BIOS.

The **Configured Boot Devices** section displays the boot order (**Basic** or **Advanced**) configured through Cisco IMC. If this configuration changes, Cisco IMC sends this boot order to BIOS the next time that server boots. The Basic configuration allows you to specify only the device type. The Advanced configuration allows you to configure the device with specific parameters such as slot, port and LUN.

To change the configured boot order, or to restore the previously configured boot order, administrators can click the **Configure Boot Order** button. To have these changes take effect immediately, reboot the server. You can verify the new boot order by refreshing the **BIOS** tab.

Note This information is only sent to BIOS the next time the server boots. Cisco IMC does not send the boot order information to BIOS again until the configuration changes.

The **Actual Boot Devices** section displays the boot order actually used by BIOS when the server last booted. The actual boot order will differ from the configured boot order if either of the following conditions occur:

- The BIOS encounters issues while trying to boot using the configured boot order.
- A user changes the boot order directly through the BIOS. To override any manual changes, you can change the configured boot order through Cisco IMC and reboot the server.

Note When you create a new policy using the configured boot order, BIOS tries to map this new policy to the device or devices present in the system. It displays the actual device name and the policy name to which it is mapped under the **Actual Boot Order** area. If BIOS cannot map any device found to a particular policy in Cisco IMC, then the actual device name is stated as **NonPolicyTarget** under the **Actual Boot Order** area.

Configuring a Server to Boot With a One-Time Boot Device

You can configure a server to boot from a particular device only for the next server boot, without disrupting the currently configured boot order. Once the server boots from the one time boot device, all its future reboots occur from the previously configured boot order.

Before you begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to configure server the boot order.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Compute** menu.

Step 2 In the **BIOS** tab, click the **Configure Boot Order** tab.

Step 3 In the **BIOS Properties** area, select an option from the **Configured One Time Boot Device** drop-down.

Note The host boots to the one time boot device even when configured with a disabled advanced boot device.

Creating a Server Asset Tag

Before you begin

You must log in with user or admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Summary**.

Step 3 In the **Server Properties** area, update the **Asset Tag** field.

Step 4 Click **Save Changes**.

Configuring Power Policies

Power Capping

Important This section is valid only for some UCS C-Series servers.

Power capping determines how server power consumption is actively managed. When you enable power capping option, the system monitors power consumption and maintains the power below the allocated power limit. If the server cannot maintain the power limit or cannot bring the platform power back to the specified power limit within the correction time, power capping performs actions that you specify in the **Action** field under the **Power Profile** area.

Once power capping is enabled, you can configure multiple power profiles to either have standard or advanced power profiles with defined attributes. If you choose a standard power profile, you can set the power limit, correction time, corrective-action, suspend period, hard capping, and policy state (if enabled). If you choose an advanced power profile, in addition to the attributes of the standard power profile, you can also set the domain specific power limits, safe throttle level, and ambient temperature based power capping attributes.

Note The following changes are applicable for Cisco UCS C-Series release 2.0(13) and later:

- After upgrading to the 2.0(13) release, power characterization automatically runs during the first host power on. Subsequent characterization runs only if initiated as described in section **Run Power Characterization** section.
- Also, when a server is power cycled and there is a change to the CPU or DIMM configurations, power characterization automatically runs on first host boot. For any other hardware change like PCIe adapters, GPU or HDDs, power characterization does not run. The characterized power range is modified depending on the components present after the host power cycle.

The **Run Power Characterization** option in the **Power Cap Configuration** Tab of the Web UI power cycles the host and starts power characterization.

Setting Power Redundancy Policy

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Sensors**.

Step 3 In the **Sensors** working area, click the **Power Supply** tab.

Step 4 Review the following sensor properties for power supply:

Properties Area

Name	Description
Redundancy Status field	The power supply redundancy status.
Redundancy Policy field	The power supply redundancy policy. This can be one of the following: • **Non-Redundant** - N, the available PSU output capacity, equals the number of PSUs installed, where PSU failure or grid failure is not supported. • **N+1** - N, the available PSU output capacity, equals the number of PSUs installed minus 1 (N-1), where the single PSU failure is supported, but grid failure is not supported. • **Grid** - N, the available PSU output capacity, equals half the number of PSUs installed (N/2), where N PSU failure or grid failure is supported. This policy implies that the you have connected N number of PSUs to one feed and the other N number of PSUs to another feed.

Enabling Power Characterization

You can enable power characterization only on some Cisco UCS C-Series servers.

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Power Management**.

Step 3 In the **Power Cap Configuration** tab, click the **Run Power Characterization** link.

A confirmation box appears that says the host is going to be either powered on or rebooted depending on the current power state. Review the message and click **OK** to close the dialog box.

You can verify the progress of the power characterization in the **Status** field. The status can be one of the following:

- **Not Run**—When power characterization has not been run at all since the factory reset.
- **Running**—When a power characterization process is in progress.
- **Completed Successfully**—When a power characterization has run successfully.
- **Using Defaults**—After running the power characterization, if the system fails to obtain the valid values, it uses default value as the recommended maximum and minimum power for power capping.

  After power characterization action is performed, the platform power limit range is populated under the **Recommended Power Cap** area as a minimum and maximum power in watts.

Three values for power capping limits are displayed: **Minimum (Allow Throttling)**, **Minimum (Efficient)** and **Maximum**:

- **Minimum (Allow Throttling)** - This is the lower power limit for the chassis, when the CPU throttling is enabled.

  Note You can use this minimum power limit value only when the **Allow Throttle** checkbox is enabled.

- **Minimum (Efficient)** - This is the lower power limit for the chassis, when the CPU throttling is disabled.
- **Maximum** - This is the upper power limit for the chassis.

Enabling Power Capping

This option is available only on some Cisco UCS C-Series servers.

Before you begin

- You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.
- Run power characterization.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Power Management**.

Step 3 Check the **Power Capping** check box.

Note This is the global option to enable or disable power capping. You must enable this option if you want to configure power profile settings.

Step 4 Click **Save Changes**.

Power Profiles

You can configure multiple profiles and set the attributes. These profiles are configured by using either the web UI or CLI. In the web UI, the profiles are listed under the **Power Capping** area. In the CLI, the profiles are configured when you enter the **power-cap-config** command. You can configure the following power profiles for power capping feature:

- **Standard**—Enables you to set a power limit for the platform domain.
- **Advanced**—Enables you to set various attributes such as the power limiting policy, fail-safe power limiting policy, and the ambient temperature-based power limiting policy.

Configuring Standard Power Profiles Settings

This option is available only on some Cisco UCS C-Series servers.

Before you begin

- You must enable power capping.
- You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Power Management**.

Step 3 In the **Power Profiles** area, complete the following fields:

Name	Description
Name field	The name of the profile selected to set the attributes for power capping.
Enable Profile check box	Enables the power profile for editing.
Allow Throttle check box	If checked, it forces the processor to use more aggressive power management mechanisms such as, CPU the throttling states (T-states) and memory bandwidth throttling to maintain the power limit, in addition to the regular internal mechanisms.
Correction Time field	The time in seconds in which the platform power should be brought back to the specified power limit before taking the action specified in the **Action** field. The range is from 1 and 600. This range varies depending on the server PSU value. **Note** The supported minimum correction time for all PSU models is 1 second, except for DPST-1400AB and DPST-1200DB PSU models for which the supported minimum correction time is 3 seconds.
Action drop-down list	The action to be performed if the specified power limit is not maintained within the correction time. • **Alert**—Logs the event to the Cisco IMC SEL. • **Alert and Shutdown**—Logs the event to the Cisco IMC SEL, and gracefully shuts down the host.

Name	Description
Power Limit check box	The power limit for the server. Enter power in watts within the range specified.
Set Hard Cap check box	If checked, ensure that no platform consumption occurs beyond the set power capping value. The platform power consumption is maintained at a safe offset margin below the configured power cap value.

Step 4 Click **Save Changes**.

Configuring Advanced Power Profile Settings

This option is available only on some Cisco UCS C-Series servers

Before you begin

- You must enable power capping.
- You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Power Management**.

Step 3 From the **Power Profiles** table in the **Power Cap Configuration** tab, choose the **Advanced** profile. In addition to the standard profile settings, the **Domain Specific Power Limit**, **Safe Throttle Level**, and **Ambient Temperature Based Power Capping** areas are displayed.

Step 4 In the **Domain Specific Power Limit** area, complete the following fields:

Name	Description
CPU field	The power limit for the CPU. Enter power in watts within the range specified.
Memory field	The power limit for the memory. Enter power in watts within the range specified.
Platform field	The power limit for the platform. Enter power in watts within the range specified.

Step 5 In the **Suspend Period** area, click **Configure** to configure a suspend period for a specific time period and day.

Step 6 In the **Safe Throttle Level** area, complete the following fields:

Name	Description
Failsafe Timeout field	The safe throttle policy that is applied when power capping is impacted due to internal faults such as missing power readings for platforms or CPUs. Enter value in seconds
Platform field	The throttling level for the platform. The range is from 0 to 100 percentage.

Step 7 In the **Ambient Temperature Based Power Capping** area, complete the following fields:

Name	Description
Platform Temp Trigger field	The inlet (front panel) temperature sensor value in Celsius. **Note** When the inlet temperature on the platform exceeds the specified limit, the system uses the thermal power value as the power capping limit.
Thermal Power Limit field	The power limit to be maintained in watts.

Step 8 Click **Save Changes**.

Resetting Power Profiles to Default

This option is available only on some Cisco UCS C-Series servers.

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Power Management**.

Step 3 In the **Power Profiles** area, click the **Reset Profiles to Default** button.

Note This action resets all the power profile settings to factory default values and disables power capping.

Step 4 Click **Save Changes**.

Power Monitoring

Power monitoring is initiated from the time the host is either powered on or booted. This feature collects the power consumption statistics for a platform, CPU, and memory domains and provides a minimum, maximum, and averaged reading for the duration that is being collected. These readings can be used to calculate the power consumption trends of the domains. Cisco IMC collects and stores these power consumption statistic values to plot graphs for various time periods (such as an hour, a day, and a week).

Note You cannot create additional statistics collection policies or delete the existing monitoring policies. You can only modify the default policies.

Viewing Power Monitoring Summary

This option is available only on some Cisco UCS C-Series servers.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Power Management**.

Step 3 On the **Work** pane, click the **Power Monitoring** tab.

Step 4 In the **Power Monitoring Summary** area, review the following information:

The following tables display the power consumed by the system and its components since the last time it was rebooted.

Name	Description
Monitoring Period	The time of monitoring the power consumed by the system since the last time it was rebooted. The monitoring period is displayed in Day HH:MM:SS format.

Step 5 In the **Platform** area, review the following information:

Name	Description
Current	The power currently being used by the server, CPU, and memory in watts.
Minimum	The minimum number of watts consumed by the server, CPU, and memory since the last time it was rebooted.
Maximum	The maximum number of watts consumed by the server, CPU, and memory since the last time it was rebooted.
Average	The average amount of power consumed by the server, CPU, and memory in watts over the defined period of time.

Step 6 In the **CPU** area, review the following information:

Name	Description
Current	The power currently being used by the CPU in watts.
Minimum	The minimum number of watts consumed by the CPU since the last time it was rebooted.
Maximum	The maximum number of watts consumed by the CPU since the last time it was rebooted.
Average	The average amount of power consumed by the server, CPU, and memory in watts over the defined period of time.

Step 7 In the **Memory** area, review the following information:

Name	Description
Current	The power currently being used by the memory, in watts.
Minimum	The minimum number of watts consumed by the memory since the last time it was rebooted.
Maximum	The maximum number of watts consumed by the memory since the last time it was rebooted.
Average	The average amount of power consumed by the memory in watts over the defined period of time.

Step 8 In the **Chart Properties** area, review and update the chart, component, and view the power consumption details.

Name	Description
Chart Settings	Enables you to configure the chart properties and the way data is displayed in the chart.
Download Power Statistics and Server Utilization Data	Enables you to download the power statistics and host server utilization information. The files are downloaded to your local download folder. **Note** If the file size of the already downloaded statistics file is less than 256 KB, then when you download, another set of files is downloaded, one for the power statistics and the other for host server utilization. If the size of the existing files exceeds 256 KB, then the next set of files overwrites the existing ones.

Name	Description
Chart drop-down list	Allows you to collect the trends of power consumption from every server for the selected duration. This can be one of the following: • **Last One Hour**— Plots the chart for every five minutes • **Last One Day**—Plots the chart for every hour from the current time. • **Last One Week**—Plots the chart for each day.
Component drop-down list	The component for which you want to view the power consumption over the selected duration. This can be one of the following: • **Platform** • **CPU** • **Memory** • **All**
Plot button	Displays the power consumed by the selected component for the specified duration.
Chart/Table View (Appears on mouse-over)	Select to view power monitoring summary in either **Chart** or **Table** view.
Chart Type (Appears on mouse-over)	Select the type of chart you wish to view. This could be one of the following: • Line Chart— Power monitoring data appears in lines. • Column Chart— Power monitoring data appears as a column.
Current check box	If checked, the chart displays the current power consumed by the selected component for the selected duration.
Average check box	If checked, the plot displays the average amount of power consumed by the selected component for the selected duration.
Maximum check box	If checked, the plot displays the maximum number of watts consumed by the selected component for the selected duration.

Name	Description
Minimum check box	If checked, the plot displays the minimum number of watts consumed by the selected component for the selected duration.

Viewing the Power Statistics in a Chart

This option is available only on some Cisco UCS C-Series servers.

Before you begin

- You must enabled power capping.
- You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Power Management**.

Step 3 In the **work** pane, click the **Power Monitoring** tab.

Step 4 On the **Power Monitoring** tab, review and update the chart, component, to view the power consumption details.

Name	Description
Chart drop-down list	Allows you to collect the trends of power consumption from every server for the selected duration. This can be one of the following: • **Last One Hour**— Plots the chart for every five minutes • **Last One Day**—Plots the chart for every hour from the current time. • **Last One Week**—Plots the chart for each day.
Component drop-down list	The component for which you want to view the power consumption over the selected duration. This can be one of the following: • **Platform** • **CPU** • **Memory** • **All**

Name	Description
Maximum check box	If checked, the plot displays the maximum number of watts consumed by the selected component for the selected duration.
Minimum check box	If checked, the plot displays the minimum number of watts consumed by the selected component for the selected duration.
Average check box	If checked, the plot displays the average amount of power consumed by the selected component for the selected duration.
Current check box	If checked, the chart displays the current power consumed by the selected component for the selected duration.
Plot button	Displays the power consumed by the selected component for the specified duration.

The power reading chart plots power consumption values of different components for the selected duration. These power consumption values are captured from the time that the host is powered on. When a power profile is enabled, the power limit is plotted in the chart as a red line. This plot can be used to determine the power consumption trend of the system. To view the configured power limit values of a particular domain, move the mouse over these trend lines.

If choose the Standard profile, the trend line represent the power limit. If you choose the Advance profile, it represents the power limit for CPU, memory, and platform depending on your power profile configuration.

Note These trend lines are not displayed if the profile is disabled on the **Power Cap Configuration** tab.

Step 5 Click **Save Changes**.

Downloading Power Statistics and Server Utilization Data

This option is available only on some Cisco UCS C-Series servers.

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Power Management**.

Step 3 In the **Work** pane, click the **Power Monitoring** tab.

Step 4 In the **Power Monitoring** tab, click **Download Power Statistics and Server Utilization Data**

The files are downloaded to your local download folder.

Note If the file size of the already downloaded statistics file is less than 256 KB, then when you download, another set of files is downloaded, one for the power statistics and the other for host server utilization. If the size of the existing files exceeds 256 KB, then the next set of files overwrites the existing ones.

Configuring the Power Restore Policy

The power restore policy determines how power is restored to the server after a chassis power loss.

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Compute** menu.

Step 2 In the work pane, click the **Power Policies** tab.

Step 3 In the **Power Restore Policy** area, update the following fields:

Name	Description
Power Restore Policy drop-down list	The action to be taken when chassis power is restored after an unexpected power loss. This can be one of the following: • **Power Off**—The server remains off until it is manually restarted. • **Power On**—The server is allowed to boot up normally when power is restored. The server can restart immediately or, optionally, after a fixed or random delay. • **Restore Last State**—The server restarts and the system attempts to restore any processes that were running before power was lost.

Step 4 Click **Save Changes**.

Configuring the Fan Policy

You can determine the right fan policy based on the server configuration and server components.

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Compute** menu.

Step 2 In the work pane, click the **Power Policies** tab.

Step 3 In the **Configured Fan Policy** area, select a fan policy from the drop-down list. It can be one of the following:

Name	Description
Fan Policy drop-down list	This can be one of the following: • **Balanced**—This setting can cool almost any server configuration, but may not be suitable for servers with PCIe cards as these cards overheat easily. • **Performance**—This setting can be used for server configurations where maximum fan speed is required for high performance. With this setting, the fan speeds run at the same speed or higher speed than that of the fan speed set with the Balanced fan policy. **Note** This option is available only on some C-Series servers. • **Low Power**—This is the default policy. This setting is ideal for minimal configuration servers that do not contain any PCIe cards. • **High Power**—This setting can be used for server configurations that require fan speeds ranging from 60% to 85%. This policy is ideal for servers that contain PCIe cards that overheat easily and have high temperatures. • **Maximum Power**—This setting can be used for server configurations that required extremely high fan speeds ranging from 70% to 100%. This policy is ideal for servers that contain PCIe cards that overheat easily and have very high temperatures. • **Acoustic**—This setting can be used for configuring the fan noise level, thereby enabling noise reduction in the servers. Application of this policy might result in performance throttling impacting system performance. If excessive thermal or performance events are recorded in the event logs, select a standard fan ontrol policy like **Low Power**, which is a non-disruptive change. **Note** This option is available only on UCS C240 M5 servers.

Name	Description
Applied Fan Policy field	The actual speed of the fan that runs on the server. When the configured fan policy is not in effect, it displays N/A. The configured fan policy takes effect when the server is powered on and the POST is complete.

Configuration Status field	The configuration status of the fan policy. This can be one of the following:
	• SUCCESS —The fan speed set by you matches the actual fan speed that runs on the server.
	• PENDING —The configured fan policy is not in effect yet. This can be due to one of the following:
	  • The server is powered off
	  • The BIOS POST is not complete
	• FAN POLICY OVERRIDE—Overrides the specified fan speed with the actual speed determined by the configuration requirements of the server.

Step 4 Click **Save Changes**.

Configuring DIMM Blacklisting

DIMM Black Listing

In Cisco IMC, the state of the Dual In-line Memory Module (DIMM) is based on SEL event records. A DIMM is marked bad if the BIOS encounters a non-correctable memory error or correctable memory error with 16000 error counts during memory test execution during BIOS post. If a DIMM is marked bad, it is considered a non-functional device.

If you enable DIMM blacklisting, Cisco IMC monitors the memory test execution messages and blacklists any DIMM that encounters memory errors at any given point of time in the DIMM SPD data. This allows the host to map out those DIMMs.

DIMMs are mapped out or blacklisted only when Uncorrectable errors occur. When a DIMM gets blacklisted, other DIMMs in the same channel are ignored or disabled, which means that the DIMM is no longer considered bad.

Note DIMMs do not get mapped out or blacklisted for 16000 Correctable errors.

Enabling DIMM Black Listing

Before you begin

- You must be logged in as an administrator.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.
Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Inventory**.
Step 3 In the **Inventory** pane, click the **Memory** tab.
Step 4 In the **Memory** pane's **DIMM Black Listing** area, click the **Enable DIMM Black List** check box.

Configuring BIOS Settings

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Compute** menu.
Step 2 In the Compute menu, click the **BIOS** tab.
Step 3 In the BIOS tab, click the **Configure BIOS** tab.
Step 4 Update the following tabs:

Table 1: BIOS Parameters in I/O Tab

Name	Description
Reboot Host Immediately checkbox	Upon checking, reboots the host server immediately. You must check the checkbox after saving changes.
Legacy USB Support drop-down list	Whether the system supports legacy USB devices. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—USB devices are only available to EFI applications. • **Enabled**—Legacy USB support is always available.

Name	Description
Intel VT for directed IO drop-down list	Whether the processor uses Intel Virtualization Technology (VT), which allows a platform to run multiple operating systems and applications in independent partitions. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The processor does not permit virtualization. • **Enabled**—The processor allows multiple operating systems in independent partitions. **Note** If you change this option, you must power cycle the server before the setting takes effect.
Intel VTD coherency support drop-down list	Whether the processor supports Intel VT-d Coherency. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The processor does not support coherency. • **Enabled**—The processor uses VT-d Coherency as required.
Intel VTD ATS support drop-down list	Whether the processor supports Intel VT-d Address Translation Services (ATS). This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The processor does not support ATS. • **Enabled**—The processor uses VT-d ATS as required.
All Onboard LOM Oprom drop-down list	Whether Option ROM is available on all LOM ports. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—Option ROM is disabled on all the ports. • **Enabled**—Option ROM is enabled on all the ports.
Onboard LOM Port0 Oprom drop-down list	Whether Option ROM is available on the LOM port 0. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—Option ROM is not available on LOM port 0. • **Enabled**—Option ROM is available on LOM port 0.
Onboard LOM Port1 Oprom drop-down list	Whether Option ROM is available on the LOM port 1. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—Option ROM is not available on LOM port 1. • **Enabled**—Option ROM is available on LOM port 1.
Pcie Slot*n* Oprom drop-down list	Whether the server can use the Option ROMs present in the PCIe card slot designated by *n*. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—Option ROM for slot *n* is not available. • **Enabled**—Option ROM for slot *n* is available.

Name	Description
MLOM Oprom drop-down list	This options allows you to control the Option ROM execution of the PCIe adapter connected to the MLOM slot. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—Does not execute Option ROM of the PCIe adapter connected to the MLOM slot. • **Enabled**—Executes Option ROM of the PCIe adapter connected to the MLOM slot.
HBA Oprom drop-down list	This options allows you to control the Option ROM execution of the PCIe adapter connected to the HBA slot. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—Does not execute Option ROM of the PCIe adapter connected to the HBA slot. • **Enabled**—Executes Option ROM of the PCIe adapter connected to the HBA slot.
Front NVME1 Oprom drop-down list	This options allows you to control the Option ROM execution of the PCIe adapter connected to the SSD:NVMe1 slot. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—Does not execute Option ROM of the PCIe adapter connected to the SSD:NVMe1 slot. • **Enabled**—Executes Option ROM of the PCIe adapter connected to the SSD:NVMe1 slot
Front NVME2 Oprom drop-down list	This options allows you to control the Option ROM execution of the PCIe adapter connected to the SSD:NVMe2 slot. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—Does not execute Option ROM of the PCIe adapter connected to the SSD:NVMe2 slot. • **Enabled**—Executes Option ROM of the PCIe adapter connected to the SSD:NVMe2 slot
HBA Link Speed drop-down list	This option allows you to restrict the maximum speed of an adapter card installed in PCIe HBA slot. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The maximum speed is not restricted. • **Auto**—System selects the maximum speed allowed. • **GEN1**—2.5GT/s (gigatransfers per second) is the maximum speed allowed. • **GEN2**—5GT/s is the maximum speed allowed. • **GEN3**—8GT/s is the maximum speed allowed.

Name	Description
MLOM Link Speed drop-down list	This option allows you to restrict the maximum speed of an adapter card installed in PCIe MLOM slot. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The maximum speed is not restricted. • **Auto**—System selects the maximum speed allowed. • **GEN1**—2.5GT/s (gigatransfers per second) is the maximum speed allowed. • **GEN2**—5GT/s is the maximum speed allowed. • **GEN3**—8GT/s is the maximum speed allowed.
PCIe Slot*n* Link Speed drop-down list	System IO Controller *n* (SIOCn) add-on slot (designated by *n*) link speed. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—Slot is disabled, and the card is not enumerated. • **Auto**— The default link speed. Link speed is automatically assigned. • **GEN1**—Link speed can reach up to first generation. • **GEN2**—Link speed can reach up to second generation. • **GEN3**—Link speed can reach up to third generation.
Front NVME1 Link Speed drop-down list	Link speed for NVMe front slot 1. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—Slot is disabled, and the card is not enumerated. • **Auto**—The default link speed. Link speed is automatically assigned. • **GEN1**—Link speed can reach up to first generation. • **GEN2**—Link speed can reach up to second generation. • **GEN3**—Link speed can reach up to third generation.
Front NVME2 Link Speed drop-down list	Link speed for NVMe front slot 2. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—Slot is disabled, and the card is not enumerated. • **Auto**—The default link speed. Link speed is automatically assigned. • **GEN1**—Link speed can reach up to first generation. • **GEN2**—Link speed can reach up to second generation. • **GEN3**—Link speed can reach up to third generation.

Name	Description
Rear NVME1 Link Speed drop-down list	Link speed for NVMe rear slot 1. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—Slot is disabled, and the card is not enumerated. • **Auto**—The default link speed. Link speed is automatically assigned. • **GEN1**—Link speed can reach up to first generation. • **GEN2**—Link speed can reach up to second generation. • **GEN3**—Link speed can reach up to third generation.
Rear NVME2 Link Speed drop-down list	Link speed for NVMe rear slot 2. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—Slot is disabled, and the card is not enumerated. • **Auto**—The default link speed. Link speed is automatically assigned. • **GEN1**—Link speed can reach up to first generation. • **GEN2**—Link speed can reach up to second generation. • **GEN3**—Link speed can reach up to third generation.
VGA Priority drop-down list	Allows you to set the priority for VGA graphics devices if multiple VGA devices are found in the system. This can be one of the following: • **OnBoard**—Priority is given to the onboard VGA device. BIOS post screen and OS boot are driven through the onboard VGA port. • **OffBoard**—Priority is given to the PCIE Graphics adapter. BIOS post screen and OS boot are driven through the external graphics adapter port. • **OnBoardDisabled**—Priority is given to the PCIe Graphics adapter, and the onboard VGA device is disabled. The vKVM does not function when the onboard VGA is disabled.
P-SATA OptionROM drop-down list	Allows you to select the PCH SATA optionROM mode. This can be one of the following: • **LSI SW Raid**— Sets both SATA and sSATA controllers to raid mode for LSI SW Raid. • **Disabled**— Disables both SATA and sSATA controllers.
M2.SATA OptionROM drop-down list	Mode of operation of Serial Advanced Technology Attachment (SATA) Solid State Drives (SSD). This can be one of the following: • **AHCI**— Sets both SATA and sSATA controllers to AHCI mode. • **LSI SW Raid**— Sets both SATA and sSATA controllers to raid mode for LSI SW Raid. • **Disabled**— Disables both SATA and sSATA controllers.

Name	Description
USB Port Rear drop-down list	Whether the rear panel USB devices are enabled or disabled. This can be one of the following • **Disabled**— Disables the rear panel USB ports. Devices connected to these ports are not detected by the BIOS and operating system. • **Enabled**— Enables the rear panel USB ports. Devices connected to these ports are detected by the BIOS and operating system.
USB Port Front drop-down list	Whether the front panel USB devices are enabled or disabled. This can be one of the following • **Disabled**— Disables the front panel USB ports. Devices connected to these ports are not detected by the BIOS and operating system. • **Enabled**— Enables the front panel USB ports. Devices connected to these ports are detected by the BIOS and operating system.
USB Port Internal drop-down list	Whether the internal USB devices are enabled or disabled. This can be one of the following • **Disabled**— Disables the internal USB ports. Devices connected to these ports are not detected by the BIOS and operating system. • **Enabled**— Enables the internal USB ports. Devices connected to these ports are detected by the BIOS and operating system.
USB Port KVM drop-down list	Whether the KVM ports are enabled or disabled. This can be one of the following • **Disabled**— Disables the KVM keyboard and/or mouse devices. Keyboard and/or mouse will not work in the KVM window. • **Enabled**— Enables the KVM keyboard and/or mouse devices.
USB Port SD Card drop-down list	Whether the SD card is enabled or disabled. This can be one of the following • **Disabled**— Disables the SD card ports. Devices connected to these ports are not detected by the BIOS and operating system. • **Enabled**— Enables the SD card ports. Devices connected to these ports are detected by the BIOS and operating system.
IPV6 PXE Support drop-down list	Enables or disables IPv6 support for PXE. This can be one of the following • **Disabled**—IPv6 PXE support is not available. • **Enabled**—IPv6 PXE support is always available.

Table 2: BIOS Parameters in Server Management Tab

Name	Description
Reboot Host Immediately checkbox	If the Reboot Host Immediately check box is checked, the server is rebooted immediately and the new BIOS settings go into effect. Otherwise the changes are saved until the server is manually rebooted.
OS Boot Watchdog Timer Policy drop-down list	What action the system takes if the watchdog timer expires. This can be one of the following: • **Power Off**—The server is powered off if the watchdog timer expires during OS boot. • **Reset**—The server is reset if the watchdog timer expires during OS boot. **Note** This option is only applicable if you enable the OS Boot Watchdog Timer.
OS Watchdog Timer drop-down list	Whether the BIOS programs the watchdog timer with a specified timeout value. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The watchdog timer is not used to track how long the server takes to boot. • **Enabled**—The watchdog timer tracks how long the server takes to boot. If the server does not boot within the length of time specified in the **OS Boot Watchdog Timer Timeout** field, the Cisco IMC logs an error and takes the action specified in the **OS Boot Watchdog Policy** field.
OS Watchdog Timer Timeout drop-down list	If OS does not boot within the specified time, OS watchdog timer expires and system takes action according to timer policy. This can be one of the following: • **5 Minutes**—The OS watchdog timer expires 5 minutes after it begins to boot. • **10 Minutes**—The OS watchdog timer expires 10 minutes after it begins to boot. • **15 Minutes**—The OS watchdog timer expires 15 minutes after it begins to boot. • **20 Minutes**—The OS watchdog timer expires 20 minutes after it begins to boot. **Note** This option is only applicable if you enable the OS Boot Watchdog Timer.

Name	Description
Baud Rate drop-down list	What Baud rate is used for the serial port transmission speed. If you disable Console Redirection, this option is not available. This can be one of the following: • **9.6k**—A 9,600 Baud rate is used. • **19.2k**—A 19,200 Baud rate is used. • **38.4k**—A 38,400 Baud rate is used. • **57.6k**—A 57,600 Baud rate is used. • **115.2k**—A 115,200 Baud rate is used. This setting must match the setting on the remote terminal application.
Console Redirection drop-down list	Allows a serial port to be used for console redirection during POST and BIOS booting. After the OS has booted, console redirection is irrelevant. This can be one of the following: • **Serial Port A**—Enables console redirection on serial port A during POST. • **Serial Port B**—Enables console redirection on serial port B during POST. • **Disabled**—No console redirection occurs during POST.
CDN Control drop-down list	Whether the Ethernet Network naming convention is according to Consistent Device Naming (CDN) or the traditional way of naming conventions. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**— CDN support for VIC cards is disabled • **Enabled**— CDN support is enabled for VIC cards.
FRB 2 Timer drop-down list	Whether the FRB2 timer is used by Cisco IMC to recover the system if it hangs during POST. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The FRB2 timer is not used. • **Enabled**—The FRB2 timer is started during POST and used to recover the system if necessary.

Name	Description
Flow Control drop-down list	Whether a handshake protocol is used for flow control. Request to Send / Clear to Send (RTS/CTS) helps to reduce frame collisions that can be introduced by a hidden terminal problem. This can be one of the following: • **None**—No flow control is used. • **RTS/CTS**—RTS/CTS is used for flow control. **Note** This setting must match the setting on the remote terminal application.
Terminal type drop-down list	What type of character formatting is used for console redirection. This can be one of the following: • **PC-ANSI**—The PC-ANSI terminal font is used. • **VT100**—A supported VT100 video terminal and its character set are used. • **VT100-PLUS**—A supported VT100-plus video terminal and its character set are used. • **VT-UTF8**—A video terminal with the UTF-8 character set is used.

Table 3: BIOS Parameters in Security Tab

Name	Description
Reboot Host Immediately checkbox	**If the Reboot Host Immediately check box is checked, the server is rebooted immediately and the new BIOS settings go into effect. Otherwise the changes are saved until the server is manually rebooted.**
Trusted Platform Module Support drop-down list	Trusted Platform Module (TPM) is a microchip designed to provide basic security-related functions primarily involving encryption keys. This option allows you to control the TPM Security Device support for the system. It can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The server does not use the TPM. • **Enabled**—The server uses the TPM. **Note** Contact your operating system vendor to make sure the operating system supports this feature.

Name	Description
Reboot Host Immediately checkbox	**If the Reboot Host Immediately check box is checked, the server is rebooted immediately and the new BIOS settings go into effect. Otherwise the changes are saved until the server is manually rebooted.**
Power on Password drop-down list	This token requires that you set a BIOS password before using the F2 BIOS configuration. If enabled, password needs to be validated before you access BIOS functions such as IO configuration, BIOS set up, and booting to an operating system using BIOS. It can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—Support is disabled. • **Enabled**—Support is enabled.

Table 4: BIOS Parameters in Processor Tab

Name	Description
Intel Virtualization Technology drop-down list	Whether the processor uses Intel Virtualization Technology (VT), which allows a platform to run multiple operating systems and applications in independent partitions. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The processor does not permit virtualization. • **Enabled**—The processor allows multiple operating systems in independent partitions.
Extended Apic drop-down list	Allows you to enable or disable extended APIC support. This can be one of the following: • **Enabled**—Enables APIC support • **Disabled**—Disables APIC support.
Processor C1E drop-down list	Whether the CPU transitions to its minimum frequency when entering the C1 state. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The CPU continues to run at its maximum frequency in C1 state. • **Enabled**—The CPU transitions to its minimum frequency. This option saves the maximum amount of power in C1 state. **Note** This option is available only on some C-Series servers.

Name	Description
Processor C6 Report drop-down list	Whether the BIOS sends the C6 report to the operating system. When the OS receives the report, it can transition the processor into the lower C6 power state to decrease energy usage while maintaining optimal processor performance. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The BIOS does not send the C6 report. • **Enabled**—The BIOS sends the C6 report, allowing the OS to transition the processor to the C6 low power state. **Note** **CPUPowerManagement** must be set to **Custom** or the server ignores the setting for this parameter. **Note** This option is available only on some C-Series servers.
Execute Disable Bit drop-down list	Classifies memory areas on the server to specify where application code can execute. As a result of this classification, the processor disables code execution if a malicious worm attempts to insert code in the buffer. This setting helps to prevent damage, worm propagation, and certain classes of malicious buffer overflow attacks. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The processor does not classify memory areas. • **Enabled**—The processor classifies memory areas. **Note** Contact your operating system vendor to make sure the operating system supports this feature.

Name	Description
Intel Turbo Boost Tech drop-down list	Whether the processor uses Intel Turbo Boost Technology, which allows the processor to automatically increase its frequency if it is running below power, temperature, or voltage specifications. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The processor does not increase its frequency automatically. • **Enabled**—The processor utilizes Turbo Boost Technology if required. **Note** **CPUPowerManagement** must be set to **Custom** or the server ignores the setting for this parameter.
Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Tech drop-down list	Whether the processor uses Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology, which allows the system to dynamically adjust processor voltage and core frequency. This technology can result in decreased average power consumption and decreased average heat production. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The processor never dynamically adjusts its voltage or frequency. • **Enabled**—The processor utilizes Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology and enables all supported processor sleep states to further conserve power. We recommend that you contact your operating system vendor to make sure the operating system supports this feature. **Note** **CPUPowerManagement** must be set to **Custom** or the server ignores the setting for this parameter.
Intel HyperThreading Tech drop-down list	Whether the processor uses Intel Hyper-Threading Technology, which allows multithreaded software applications to execute threads in parallel within each processor. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The processor does not permit hyperthreading. • **Enabled**—The processor allows for the parallel execution of multiple threads.

Name	Description
Workload Configuration drop-down list	This feature allows for workload optimization. The options are Balanced and I/O Sensitive: • **NUMA** • **UMA**
Core MultiProcessing drop-down list	Allows you to disable one or more of the physical cores on the server. This can be one of the following: • **All**—Enables all physical cores. This also enables Hyper Threading on the associated logical processor cores. • **1 through 28**—Specifies the number of physical processor cores that can run on the server. Each physical core has an associated logical core. **Note** Contact your operating system vendor to make sure the operating system supports this feature.
Sub NUMA Clustering drop-down list	Whether the CPU supports sub NUMA clustering, in which the tag directory and the memory channel are always in the same region. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**— Sub NUMA clustering does not occur. • **Enabled**— Sub NUMA clustering occurs. • **Auto** — The BIOS determines what Sub NUMA clustering is done.
IMC Interleave drop-down list	This BIOS option controls the interleaving between the Integrated Memory Controllers (IMCs). • **1-way Interleave**—There is no interleaving. • **2-way Interleave**—Addresses are interleaved between the two IMCs. • **Auto** —CPU determines the IMC Interleaving mode.

Name	Description
XPT Prefetch drop-down list	Whether XPT prefetch is used to enable a read request sent to the last level cache to issue a copy of that request to the memory controller prefetcher. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The CPU does not use the XPT Prefetch option. • **Enabled**—The CPU enables the XPT prefetch option.
UPI Prefetch drop-down list	UPI prefetch is a mechanism to get the memory read started early on a DDR bus. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The processor does not preload any cache data. • **Enabled**—The UPI prefetcher preloads the L1 cache with the data it determines to be the most relevant.
Energy Performance BIOS Config drop-down list	Allows you to determine whether system performance or energy efficiency is more important on this server. This can be one of the following: • **Performance** — The server provides all server components with full power at all times. This option maintains the highest level of performance and requires the greatest amount of power. • **Balanced Performance** — The server provides all server components with enough power to keep a balance between performance and power. • **Balanced Power** — The server provides all server components with enough power to keep a balance between performance and power. • **Power** — The server provides all server components with maximum power to keep reduce power consumption.
Power Performance Tuning drop-down list	Determines if the BIOS or Operating System can turn on the energy performance bias tuning. The options are BIOS and OS. • **BIOS**— Chooses BIOS for energy performance tuning. • **OS**— Chooses OS for energy performance tuning.

Name	Description
LLC Prefetch drop-down list	Whether the processor uses the LLC Prefetch mechanism to fetch the date into the LLC. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The processor does not preload any cache data. • **Enabled**—The LLC prefetcher preloads the L1 cache with the data it determines to be the most relevant.
Package C State	The amount of power available to the server components when they are idle. This can be one of the following: • **No Limit**—The server may enter any available C state. • **Auto** —The CPU determines the physical elevation. • **C0 C1 State**—The server provides all server components with full power at all times. This option maintains the highest level of performance and requires the greatest amount of power. • **C2**—When the CPU is idle, the system reduces the power consumption further than with the C1 option. This requires less power than C1 or C0, but it takes the server slightly longer to return to high performance mode. • **C6 Non Retention**—When the CPU is idle, the system reduces the power consumption further than with the C3 option. This option saves more power than C0, C1, or C3, but there may be performance issues until the server returns to full power. • **C6 Retention**—When the CPU is idle, the system reduces the power consumption further than with the C3 option. This option saves more power than C0, C1, or C3, but there may be performance issues until the server returns to full power.

Name	Description
Hardware P-States drop-down list	Enables processor Hardware P-State. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—HWPM is disabled. • **HWPM Native Mode**—HWPM native mode is enabled. • **HWPM OOB Mode**—HWPM Out-Of-Box mode is enabled. • **Native Mode with no Legacy** (only GUI)

Table 5: BIOS Parameters in Memory Tab

Name	Description
Reboot Host Immediately checkbox	Upon checking, reboots the host server immediately. You must check the checkbox after saving changes.
Select Memory RAS configuration drop-down list	Determines how the memory reliability, availability, and serviceability (RAS) is configured for the server. This can be one of the following: • **Maximum Performance**—System performance is optimized. • **Mirror Mode 1LM**—System reliability is optimized by using half the system memory as backup.
Above 4G Decoding drop-down list	Enables or disables MMIO above 4GB or not. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The server does not map I/O of 64-bit PCI devices to 4GB or greater address space. • **Enabled**—The server maps I/O of 64-bit PCI devices to 4GB or greater address space. **Note** PCI devices that are 64-bit compliant but use a legacy option ROM may not function correctly with this setting enabled.
DCPMM Firmware Downgrade drop-down list	Whether the BIOS supports downgrading the DCPMM firmware. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—Support is disabled. • **Enabled**—Support is enabled.

Name	Description
NUMA drop-down list	Whether the BIOS supports Non-Uniform Memory Access (NUMA). This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—Support is disabled. • **Enabled**—Support is enabled.

Table 6: BIOS Parameters in Power/Performance Tab

Name	Description
Reboot Host Immediately checkbox	Upon checking, reboots the host server immediately. You must check the checkbox after saving changes.
Hardware Prefetcher drop-down list	Whether the processor allows the Intel hardware prefetcher to fetch streams of data and instruction from memory into the unified second-level cache when necessary. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The hardware prefetcher is not used. • **Enabled**—The processor uses the hardware prefetcher when cache issues are detected.
Adjacent Cache Line Prefetcher drop-down list	Whether the processor fetches cache lines in even or odd pairs instead of fetching just the required line. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The processor only fetches the required line. • **Enabled**—The processor fetches both the required line and its paired line.
DCU Streamer Prefetch drop-down list	Whether the processor uses the DCU IP Prefetch mechanism to analyze historical cache access patterns and preload the most relevant lines in the L1 cache. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The processor does not try to anticipate cache read requirements and only fetches explicitly requested lines. • **Enabled**—The DCU prefetcher analyzes the cache read pattern and prefetches the next line in the cache if it determines that it may be needed.
DCU IP Prefetcher drop-down list	Whether the processor uses the DCU IP Prefetch mechanism to analyze historical cache access patterns and preload the most relevant lines in the L1 cache. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The processor does not preload any cache data. • **Enabled**—The DCU IP prefetcher preloads the L1 cache with the data it determines to be the most relevant.

Name	Description
CPU Performance drop-down list	Sets the CPU performance profile for the options listed above. This can be one of the following: • **Enterprise**—All options are enabled. • **HPC**—All options are enabled. This setting is also known as high performance computing. • **Hight Throughput**—Only the DCU IP Prefetcher is enabled. The rest of the options are disabled. • **Custom**—All performance profile options can be configured from the BIOS setup on the server. In addition, the Hardware Prefetcher and Adjacent Cache-Line Prefetch options can be configured as well.

BIOS Profiles

On the Cisco UCS server, default token files are available for every server platform, and you can configure the value of these tokens using the Graphic User Interface (GUI), CLI interface, and the XML API interface. To optimize server performance, these token values must be configured in a specific combination.

Configuring a BIOS profile helps you to utilize pre-configured token files with the right combination of the token values. Some of the pre-configured profiles that are available are virtualization, high-performance, low power, and so on. You can download the various options of these pre-configured token files from the Cisco website and apply it on the servers through the BMC.

You can edit the downloaded profile to change the value of the tokens or add new tokens. This allows you to customize the profile to your requirements without having to wait for turnaround time.

Uploading a BIOS Profile

You can upload a BIOS profile either from a remote server location or through a browser client.

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Compute** menu.

Step 2 In the work pane, click the **BIOS** tab.

Step 3 Click the **Configure BIOS Profile** tab.

Step 4 To upload the BIOS profile using a remote server location, in the **BIOS Profile** area, click the **Upload** button.

Step 5 In the **Upload BIOS Profile** dialog box, update the following fields:

Name	Description
Upload BIOS Profile from drop-down list	The remote server type. This can be one of the following: • **TFTP** • **FTP** • **SFTP** • **SCP** • **HTTP**
Server IP/Hostname field	The IP address or hostname of the server on which the BIOS profile information is available. Depending on the setting in the Upload BIOS Profile from drop-down list, the name of the field may vary.
Path and Filename field	The path and filename of the BIOS profile on the remote server.
Username field	Username of the remote server.
Password field	Password of the remote server.
Upload button	Uploads the selected BIOS profile. **Note** If you chose SCP or SFTP as the remote server type while performing this action, a pop-up window is displayed with the message *Server (RSA) key fingerprint is <server_finger_print _ID> Do you wish to continue?*. Click Yes or No depending on the authenticity of the server fingerprint. The fingerprint is based on the host's public key and helps you to identify or verify the host you are connecting to.
Cancel button	Closes the wizard without making any changes to the firmware versions stored on the server.

Step 6 To upload the BIOS profile using a browser client, in the **BIOS Profile** area, click the **Upload** button.

Step 7 In the **Upload BIOS Profile** dialog box, update the following fields:

Name	Description
File field	The BIOS profile that you want to upload.
Browse button	Opens a dialog box that allows you to navigate to the appropriate file.

What to do next

Activate a BIOS profile.

Activating a BIOS Profile

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Compute** menu.
Step 2 In the work pane, click the **BIOS** tab.
Step 3 Click the **Configure BIOS Profile** tab.
Step 4 Select a BIOS profile from the **BIOS Profile** area and click **Activate**.
Step 5 At the prompt, click **Yes** to activate the BIOS profile.

Deleting a BIOS Profile

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Compute** menu.
Step 2 In the **Compute** menu, select a server.
Step 3 In the work pane, click the **BIOS** tab.
Step 4 Select a BIOS profile from the **BIOS Profile** area and click **Delete**.
Step 5 At the prompt, click **OK** to delete the BIOS profile.

Backing up a BIOS Profile

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Compute** menu.
Step 2 In the **Compute** menu, select a server.
Step 3 In the work pane, click the **BIOS** tab.
Step 4 Select a BIOS profile from the **BIOS Profile** area and click **Take Backup**.
Step 5 At the prompt, click **OK** to take a backup of the BIOS profile.

What to do next

Activate a BIOS profile.

Viewing BIOS Profile Details

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Compute** menu.
Step 2 In the **Compute** menu, select a server.
Step 3 In the work pane, click the **BIOS** tab.
Step 4 Select a BIOS profile from the **BIOS Profile** area and click **Details**.
Step 5 Review the following information in the **BIOS Profile Details** window:

Name	Description
Token Name column	Displays the token name of the BIOS profile.
Display Name column	Displays the user name of the BIOS profile.
Profile Value column	Displays the value that was provided in the uploaded file.
Actual Value column	Displays the value of the active BIOS configuration.

Setting Dynamic Front Panel Temperature Threshold

The Dynamic Front Panel Temperature Threshold option allows you to set the upper critical threshold for the front panel temperature sensor.

Procedure

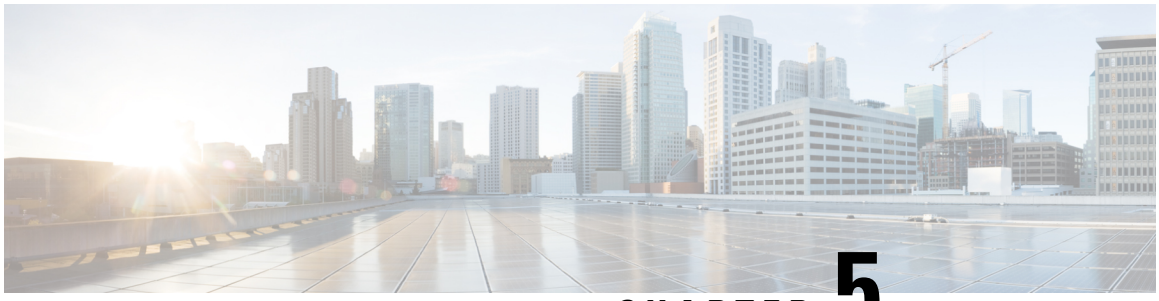
Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Sensors**.

Step 3 In the **Sensors** pane, click the **Temperature** tab.

Step 4 Expand the **Dynamic Front Panel Temperature Threshold** area, and enter an upper critical threshold for the front panel temperature sensor in the **Critical** field. You can enter a value between 8 and 50.

Step 5 Click **Save Changes**.



CHAPTER 5

Viewing Server Properties

This chapter includes the following sections:

Viewing Server Utilization

Procedure

Step 1 Log into Cisco IMC interface.

Step 2 In the Navigation pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 3 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Summary**.

The **Summary** node provides information on **Server Properties**, **Chassis status**, **Cisco IMC Information**, and **Server Utilization**.

Real-time monitoring of CPU, memory, and I/O utilization in the system is provided interms of **Compute Usage Per Second (CUPS)** . It is independent of the OS and does not consume CPU resources.

Cisco servers monitors below sensors:

Platform CUPS Sensor - Provides the Computation, Memory, and I/O resource utilization value in the form of a platform CUPS Index.

Core CUPS Sensor - Provides the computation utilization value.

Memory CUPS Sensor - Provides the memory utilization value.

IO CUPS Sensor - Provides the I/O resource utilization value.

Note CUPS sensors are hardware level sensors and the values will not match the values from OS based tools.

These utilization values are obtained by querying the data from a set of dedicated, sideband telemetry counters provided by the platform ingredients (CPU and chipset). These counters are called **Resource Monitoring Counters (RMCs)**.

RMCs provide the real-time information pertaining to the three main domains of platform resources – CPU, memory, and I/O. The utilization information for each of these domains is obtained by aggregating the individual counters at a resource instance level.

Step 4 In the **Server Utilization** area, review the following information:

Name	Description
Overall Utilization (%)	Measured as CUPS Index. This is a composite metric used to provide quick high level assessment of Platform Utilization. The CUPS Index is thus a measure of the compute headroom available on the server. Hence, if the system has a large CUPS Index, then there is limited headroom to place additional workload on that system. As the resource consumption decreases, the system's CUPS Index decreases. A low CUPS Index indicates that there is a large amount of compute headroom and the server is a prime target for receiving new workloads or having the workload migrated off and the server being put into a lower power state in order to reduce power consumption. Such workload monitoring can then be applied throughout the data center to provide a high-level and holistic view of the datacenter's workload.
CPU Utilization (%)	CPU RMC provides CPU utilization metrics. These are individual CPU core counters which are aggregated to provide the cumulative utilization of all the cores in the package.
Memory Utilization (%)	Memory RMC provides memory utilization metrics. These are individual counters to measure memory traffic occurring at each memory channel or memory controller instance. These are then aggregated to measure the cumulative memory traffic across all the memory channels in the package.
IO Utilization (%)	IO RMC provides IO utilization metrics. These are individual counters, one per root port in the PCI Express Root Complex to measure PCI Express traffic emanating from or directed to that root port and the segment below. These counters are then aggregated to measure PCI express traffic for all PCI Express segments emanating from the package. The PCI Express Root Port represents a PCI segment and is hence is the single central component that carries the entire traffic generated by that segment.

Viewing CPU Properties

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Inventory**.

Step 3 In the **Inventory** pane, click the **CPUs** tab.

Step 4 Review the following information for each CPU:

Name	Description
Socket Name field	The socket in which the CPU is installed.
Vendor field	The vendor for the CPU.
Status field	The status of the CPU.
Family field	The family to which this CPU belongs.
Version field	The version information of the CPU.
Speed field	The CPU speed, in megahertz.
Number of Cores field	The number of cores in the CPU.
Signature field	The signature information for the CPU.
Number of Threads field	The maximum number of threads that the CPU can process concurrently.

Viewing Memory Properties

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Inventory**.

Step 3 In the **Inventory** pane, click the **Memory** tab.

Step 4 In the **Memory Summary** area, review the following summary information about memory:

Name	Description
Memory Speed field	The memory speed, in megahertz.
Failed Memory field	The amount of memory that is currently failing, in megabytes.

Name	Description
Total Memory field	The total amount of memory available on the server if all DIMMs are fully functional.
Ignored Memory field	The amount of memory currently not available for use, in megabytes.
Effective Memory field	The actual amount of memory currently available to the server.
Number of Ignored DIMMs field	The number of DIMMs that the server cannot access.
Redundant Memory field	The amount of memory used for redundant storage.
Number of Failed DIMMs field	The number of DIMMs that have failed and cannot be used.
Memory RAS Possible field	Details about the RAS memory configuration that the server supports.
Memory Configuration field	The current memory configuration. This can be one of the following: • **Maximum Performance**—The system automatically optimizes the memory performance. • **Mirroring**—The server maintains two identical copies of the data in memory. This option effectively halves the available memory on the server, as one half is automatically reserved for mirrored copy. • **Lockstep**—If the DIMM pairs in the server have an identical type, size, and organization and are populated across the SMI channels, you can enable lockstep mode to minimize memory access latency and provide better performance.
DIMM location diagram	Displays the DIMM or memory layout for the current server.

Step 5 In the **DIMM Black Listing** area, view the overall status of a DIMM and also enable DIMM black listing.

Name	Description
Overall DIMM Status field	The overall status of a DIMM. This can be one of the following: • **Good**—The DIMM status is available. • **Severe Fault**— The DIMM status when uncorrectable ECC errors are present.
Enable DIMM Black List checkbox	Check this option to enable DIMM black listing.

Step 6 In the **Memory Details** table, review the following detailed information about each DIMM:

Tip Click a column header to sort the table rows, according to the entries in that column.

Name	Description
Name column	The name of the DIMM slot in which the memory module is installed.

Name	Description
Capacity column	The size of the DIMM.
Channel Speed column	The clock speed of the memory channel, in megahertz.
Channel Type column	The type of memory channel.
Memory Type Detail column	The type of memory used in the device.
Bank Locator column	The location of the DIMM within the memory bank.
Manufacturer column	The vendor ID of the manufacturer. This can be one of the following: • **0x2C00**—Micron Technology, Inc. • **0x5105**—Qimonda AG i. In. • **0x802C**—Micron Technology, Inc. • **0x80AD**—Hynix Semiconductor Inc. • **0x80CE**—Samsung Electronics, Inc. • **0x8551**—Qimonda AG i. In. • **0xAD00**—Hynix Semiconductor Inc. • **0xCE00**—Samsung Electronics, Inc.
Serial Number column	The serial number of the DIMM.
Asset Tag column	The asset tag associated with the DIMM, if any.
Part Number column	The part number for the DIMM assigned by the vendor.
Visibility column	Whether the DIMM is available to the server.
Operability column	Whether the DIMM is currently operating correctly.
Data Width column	The amount of data the DIMM supports, in bits.

Viewing PCI Adapter Properties

Before you begin

The server must be powered on, or the properties will not display.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Inventory**.

Step 3 In the **Inventory** pane, click the **PCI Adapters** tab.

Step 4 In the **PCI Adapters** area, review the following information for the installed PCI adapters:

Name	Description
Slot ID column	The slot in which the adapter resides.
Product Name column	The name of the adapter.
Option ROM Status column	Indicates the Option ROM status. This can be one of the following: • Loaded—Data is available in the card. • Unloaded—Data is not available in the card. • Load Error—Card is present and Option ROM is enabled. But Option ROM failed to load due to an error in the card. **Note** This field is available only on some C-Series servers.
Firmware Version column	The firmware versions of the adapters. **Note** The firmware versions are displayed only for adapters that provide versions through the standard UEFI interface. For example, Intel LOM and Emulex Adapters.
Vendor ID column	The adapter ID assigned by the vendor.
Sub Vendor ID column	The secondary adapter ID assigned by the vendor.
Device ID column	The device ID assigned by the vendor.
Sub Device ID column	The secondary device ID assigned by the vendor.

Viewing Storage Properties

Before you begin

The server must be powered on, or the properties will not display.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Compute** menu.

Step 2 In the **Compute** menu, select a server.

Step 3 In the work pane, click the **Inventory** tab.

Step 4 In the **Storage** tab's **Storage** area, review the following information:

Name	Description
Controller field	PCIe slot in which the controller drive is located.
PCI Slot field	The name of the PCIe slot in which the controller drive is located.
Product Name field	Name of the controller.
Serial Number field	The serial number of the storage controller.
Firmware Package Build field	The active firmware package version number.
Product ID field	Product ID of the controller.
Battery Status field	Status of the battery.
Cache Memory Size field	The size of the cache memory, in megabytes.
Health field	The health of the controller.
Details field	Link to the details of the controller.

Viewing TPM Properties

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Inventory**.

Step 3 In the **Inventory** pane, click the **TPM** tab

Step 4 Review the following information:

Name	Description
Version field	The TPM version. This field displays **NA** if the TPM version details are not available.
Presence field	Presence of the TPM module on the host server. • **Equipped**—The TPM is present on the host server. • **Empty**—The TPM does not exist on the host server.
Model field	The model number of the TPM. This field displays **NA** if the TPM does not exist on the host server.

Name	Description
Enabled Status field	Whether or not the TPM is enabled. • **Enabled**—The TPM is enabled. • **Disabled**—The TPM is disabled. • **Unknown**—The TPM does not exist on the host server.
Vendor field	The name of the TPM vendor. This field displays **NA** if the TPM does not exist on the host server.
Active Status field	Activation status of the TPM. • **Activated**—The TPM is activated. • **Deactivated**—The TPM is deactivated. • **Unknown**—The TPM does not exist on the host server. **Note** In some C-series servers that have installed TPM version 2.0, **Active Status** is displayed as **NA**.
Serial field	The serial number of the TPM. This field displays **NA** if the TPM does not exist on the host server.
Ownership field	The ownership status of TPM. • **Owned**—The TPM is owned. • **Unowned**—The TPM is unowned. • **Unknown**—The TPM does not exist on the host server. **Note** In some C-series servers that have installed TPM version 2.0, **Ownership** status is displayed as **NA**.
Revision field	Revision number of the TPM. This field displays **NA** if the TPM does not exist on the host server.

Viewing a PID Catalog

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Compute** tab.

Step 2 In the **Compute** working area, click the **PID Catalog** tab.

Step 3 In the **Summary** area, review the following summary information about the PID catalog:

Name	Description
Upload Status field	The download status of the PID catalog. It can be any of the following: • Download in Progress • Download Successful • Download Error - TFTP File Not Found • Download Error - Connection Failed • Download Error - Access Denied • Download Error - File Not Found • Download Error - Download Failed • Activation Successful • Error - Unknown • N/A
Activation Status field	The activation status of the PID catalog.
Current Activated version field	The activated version of the PID catalog.

Step 4 In the **CPU** table, review the following information about CPU:

Name	Description
Socket field	The socket in which the CPU is installed.
Product ID field	The product ID for the CPU.
Model field	The model number of the CPU

Step 5 In the **Memory** table, review the following information about memory:

Name	Description
Name field	The name of the memory slot.
Product ID field	The product ID for the memory slot assigned by the vendor.
Vendor ID field	The ID assigned by the vendor.
Capacity field	The size of the memory.
Speed (MHz) field	The memory speed, in megahertz.

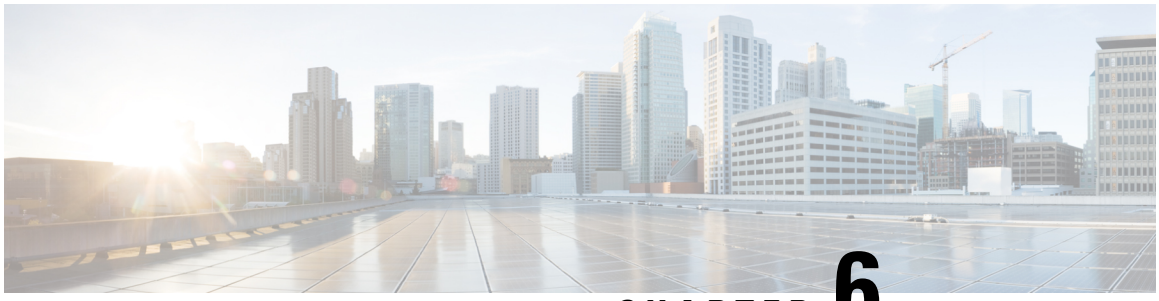
Step 6 In the **PCI Adapters** table, review the following information about PCI adapter:

Name	Description
Slot column	The slot in which the adapter resides.

Name	Description
Product ID column	The product ID for the adapter.
Vendor ID column	The adapter ID assigned by the vendor.
Sub Vendor ID column	The secondary adapter ID assigned by the vendor.
Device ID column	The device ID assigned by the vendor.
Sub Device ID column	The secondary device ID assigned by the vendor.

Step 7 In the **HDD** table, review the following information about HDD:

Name	Description
Disk field	The disk of the hard drive.
Product ID field	The product ID for the hard drive.
Controller field	The system-defined name of the selected Cisco Flexible Flash controller. This name cannot be changed.
Vendor field	The vendor for the hard drive.
Model field	The model of the hard drive.



CHAPTER 6

Viewing Sensors

This chapter includes the following sections:

Viewing Chassis Sensors

Viewing Power Supply Sensors

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Sensors**.

Step 3 In the **Sensors** working area, click the **Power Supply** tab.

Step 4 Review the following sensor properties for power supply:

Properties Area

Name	Description
Redundancy Status field	The power supply redundancy status.

Threshold Sensors Area

Name	Description
Sensor Name column	The name of the sensor

Name	Description
Sensor Status column	The status of the sensor. This can be one of the following: • **Unknown** • **Informational** • **Normal** • **Warning** • **Critical** • **Non-Recoverable**
Reading column	The current power usage, in watts.
Critical Threshold Min column	The minimum critical threshold.
Critical Threshold Max column	The maximum critical threshold.
Non-Recoverable Threshold Min column	The minimum non-recoverable threshold.
Non-Recoverable Threshold Max column	The maximum non-recoverable threshold.

Discrete Sensors Area

Name	Description
Sensor Name column	The name of the sensor.
Sensor Status column	The status of the sensor. This can be one of the following: • **Unknown** • **Informational** • **Normal** • **Warning** • **Critical** • **Non-Recoverable**
Reading column	The basic state of the sensor.

Viewing Fan Sensors

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Sensors**.

Step 3 In the **Sensors** working area, click the **Fan** tab.

Step 4 Review the following fan sensor properties:

Name	Description
Sensor Name column	The name of the sensor
Sensor Status column	The status of the sensor. This can be one of the following: • **Unknown** • **Informational** • **Normal** • **Warning** • **Critical** • **Non-Recoverable**
Speed (RPMS) column	The fan speed in RPM.
Critical Threshold Min column	The minimum critical threshold.
Critical Threshold Max column	The maximum critical threshold.
Non-Recoverable Threshold Min column	The minimum non-recoverable threshold.
Non-Recoverable Threshold Max column	The maximum non-recoverable threshold.

Viewing Temperature Sensors

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Sensors**.

Step 3 In the **Sensors** working area, click the **Temperature** tab.

Step 4 Review the following temperature sensor properties:

Name	Description
Sensor Name column	The name of the sensor
Sensor Status column	The status of the sensor. This can be one of the following: • **Unknown** • **Informational** • **Normal** • **Warning** • **Critical** • **Non-Recoverable**
Temperature column	The current temperature, in Celsius.
Critical Threshold Min column	The minimum critical threshold.
Critical Threshold Max column	The maximum critical threshold.
Non-Recoverable Threshold Min column	The minimum non-recoverable threshold.
Non-Recoverable Threshold Max column	The maximum non-recoverable threshold.

Viewing Voltage Sensors

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Sensors**.

Step 3 In the **Sensors** working area, click the **Voltage** tab.

Step 4 Review the following voltage sensor properties:

Name	Description
Sensor Name column	The name of the sensor

Name	Description
Sensor Status column	The status of the sensor. This can be one of the following: • **Unknown** • **Informational** • **Normal** • **Warning** • **Critical** • **Non-Recoverable**
Voltage (V) column	The current voltage, in Volts.
Critical Threshold Min column	The minimum critical threshold.
Critical Threshold Max column	The maximum critical threshold.
Non-Recoverable Threshold Min column	The minimum non-recoverable threshold.
Non-Recoverable Threshold Max column	The maximum non-recoverable threshold.

Viewing Current Sensors

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Sensors**.

Step 3 In the **Sensors** working area, click the **Current** tab.

Step 4 Review the following current sensor properties:

Name	Description
Sensor Name column	The name of the sensor

Name	Description
Sensor Status column	The status of the sensor. This can be one of the following: • **Unknown** • **Informational** • **Normal** • **Warning** • **Critical** • **Non-Recoverable**
Current (A) column	The value of current, in Ampere (A).
Critical Threshold Min column	The minimum critical threshold.
Critical Threshold Max column	The maximum critical threshold.
Non-Recoverable Threshold Min column	The minimum non-recoverable threshold.
Non-Recoverable Threshold Max column	The maximum non-recoverable threshold.

Viewing LED Sensors

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Sensors**.

Step 3 In the **Sensors** working area, click the **LEDs** tab.

Step 4 Review the following LED sensor properties:

Name	Description
Sensor Name column	The name of the sensor
LED Status column	Whether the LED is on, blinking, or off.
LED Color column	The current color of the LED. For details about what the colors mean, see the hardware installation guide for the type of server you are using.

Viewing Storage Sensors

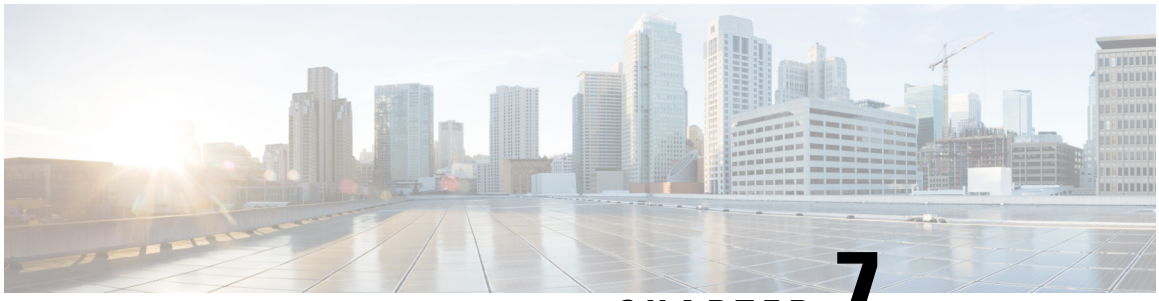
Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Compute** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Sensors**.

Step 3 In the **Storage** tab's **Storage Sensors** area, view the following storage-related statistics for the server:

Name	Description
Name column	The name of the storage device.
Status column	A brief description of the storage device status.



CHAPTER 7

Managing Remote Presence

This chapter includes the following sections:

Configuring Serial Over LAN

Serial over LAN enables the input and output of the serial port of a managed system to be redirected over IP. Configure and use serial over LAN on your server when you want to reach the host console with Cisco IMC.

Important You cannot use native serial redirection and serial over LAN simultaneously.

Before you begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to configure serial over LAN.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Compute** menu.

Step 2 In the **Compute** menu, select a server.

Step 3 In the work pane, click the **Remote Management** tab.

Step 4 In the **Remote Presence** pane, click the **Serial over LAN** tab.

Step 5 In the **Serial over LAN Properties** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
Enabled check box	If checked, Serial over LAN (SoL) is enabled on this server.
Baud Rate drop-down list	The baud rate the system uses for SoL communication. This can be one of the following: • **9600 bps** • **19.2 kbps** • **38.4 kbps** • **57.6 kbps** • **115.2 kbps**
Com Port drop-down list	The serial port through which the system routes SoL communication. **Note** This field is only available on some C-Series servers. If it is not available, the server always uses COM port 0 for SoL communication. You can select one of the following: • **com0**—SoL communication is routed through COM port 0, an externally accessible serial port that supports either a physical RJ45 connection to an external device or a virtual SoL connection to a network device. If you select this option, the system enables SoL and disables the RJ45 connection, which means that the server can no longer support an external serial device. • **com1**—SoL communication is routed through COM port 1, an internal port accessible only through SoL. If you select this option, you can use SoL on COM port 1 and the physical RJ45 connection on COM port 0. **Note** Changing the Com Port setting disconnects any existing SoL sessions. **Note** This option is available only on some C-Series servers.
SSH Port filed	The port through which you can access Serial over LAN directly. The port enables you to by-pass the Cisco IMC shell to provide direct access to SoL. The valid range is 1024 to 65535. The default value is 2400. **Note** Changing the SSH Port setting disconnects any existing SSH sessions.

Step 6 Click **Save Changes**.

Configuring Virtual Media

Before you begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to configure virtual media.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Compute** tab.

Step 2 In the **Compute** tab, click the **Remote Management** tab.

Step 3 In the **Remote Management** tab, click the **Virtual Media** tab.

Step 4 In the **Virtual Media Properties** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
Enabled check box	If checked, virtual media is enabled. **Note** If you clear this check box, all virtual media devices are automatically detached from the host.
Active Sessions field	The number of virtual media sessions that are currently running.
Enable Virtual Media Encryption check box	If checked, all virtual media communications are encrypted.
Low Power USB enabled check box	If checked, low power USB is enabled. If the low power USB is enabled, after mapping the ISO and rebooting the host, the virtual drives appear on the boot selection menu. But, while mapping an ISO to a server that has a UCS VIC P81E card and the NIC is in Cisco Card mode, this option must be disabled for the virtual drives to appear on the boot selection menu.

Step 5 Click **Save Changes**.

Creating a Cisco IMC Mapped vMedia Volume

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Compute** menu.

Step 2 In the **Compute** menu, select a server.

Step 3 In the work pane, click the **Remote Management** tab.

Step 4 In the **Remote Management** tab, click the **Virtual Media** tab

Step 5 In the Current Mappings area, click **Add New Mapping**.

Step 6 In the **Add New Mapping** dialog box, update the following fields:

Name	Description
Volume field	The identity of the image mounted for mapping.
Mount Type drop-down list	The type of mapping. This can be one of the following: **Note** Ensure that the communication port of the mount type that you choose is enabled on the switch. For example, when you are using CIFS as your mount type, ensure port 445 (which is its communication port) is enabled on the switch. Similarly, enable ports 80 for HTTP, 443 for HTTPS and 2049 for NFS when you use them. • **NFS**—Network File System. • **CIFS**—Common Internet File System. • **WWW(HTTP/HTTPS)**—HTTP-based or HTTPS-based system. **Note** Before mounting the virtual media, Cisco IMC tries to verify reachability to the end server by pinging the server.
Remote Share field	The URL of the image to be mapped. The format depends on the selected **Mount Type**: • **NFS**—Use **`serverip:/share`**. • **CIFS**—Use **`//serverip/share`**. • **WWW(HTTP/HTTPS)**—Use **`http[s]://serverip/share`**.
Remote File field	The name and location of the .iso or .img file in the remote share.

Name	Description
Mount Options field	

Name	Description
	Industry-standard mount options entered in a comma separated list. The options vary depending on the selected **Mount Type**. If you are using **NFS**, leave the field blank or enter one or more of the following: • **ro** • **rw** **Note** The folder, which is shared, should have write permissions to use read-write option. Read-write option is available only for .img files. • **nolock** • **noexec** • **soft** • **port=VALUE** • **timeo=VALUE** • **retry=VALUE** If you are using **CIFS**, leave the field blank or enter one or more of the following: • **soft** • **nounix** • **noserverino** • **guest** • **username=VALUE**—ignored if **guest** is entered. • **password=VALUE**—ignored if **guest** is entered. • **sec=VALUE** The protocol to use for authentication when communicating with the remote server. Depending on the configuration of CIFS share, **VALUE** could be one of the following: • **None**—No authentication is used • **Ntlm**—NT LAN Manager (NTLM) security protocol. Use this option only with Windows 2008 R2 and Windows 2012 R2. • **Ntlmi**—NTLMi security protocol. Use this option only when you enable Digital Signing in the CIFS Windows server. • **Ntlmssp**—NT LAN Manager Security Support Provider (NTLMSSP) protocol. Use this option only with Windows

Name	Description
	2008 R2 and Windows 2012 R2. • **Ntlmsspi**—NTLMSSPi protocol. Use this option only when you enable Digital Signing in the CIFS Windows server. • **Ntlmv2**—NTLMv2 security protocol. Use this option only with Samba Linux. • **Ntlmv2i**—NTLMv2i security protocol. Use this option only with Samba Linux. If you are using **WWW(HTTP/HTTPS)**, leave the field blank or enter the following: • `noauto` **Note** Before mounting the virtual media, Cisco IMC tries to verify reachability to the end server by pinging the server. • `username=VALUE` • `password=VALUE`
User Name field	The username for the specified **Mount Type**, if required.
Password field	The password for the selected username, if required.

Step 7 Click **Save**.

Viewing Cisco IMC-Mapped vMedia Volume Properties

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Compute** menu.
Step 2 In the **Compute** menu, select a server.
Step 3 In the work pane, click the **Remote Management** tab.
Step 4 In the **Remote Management** tab, click the **Virtual Media** tab
Step 5 Select a row from the **Current Mappings** table.
Step 6 Click **Properties** and review the following information:

Name	Description
Add New Mapping button	Opens a dialog box that allows you to add a new image.
Properties button	Opens a dialog box that allows you to view or change the properties for the selected image.
Unmap button	Unmaps the mounted vMedia.
Last Mapping Status	The status of the last mapping attempted.
Volume column	The identity of the image.
Mount Type drop-down list	The type of mapping.
Remote Share field	The URL of the image.
Remote File field	The exact file location of the image.
Status field	The current status of the map. This can be one of the following: • **OK**—The mapping is successful. • **In Progress**—The mapping is in progress. • **Stale**—Cisco IMC displays a text string with the reason why the mapping is stale. • **Error**—Cisco IMC displays a text string with the reason for the error.

Removing a Cisco IMC-Mapped vMedia Volume

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Compute** menu.
Step 2 In the **Compute** menu, select a server.
Step 3 In the work pane, click the **Remote Management** tab.
Step 4 In the **Remote Management** tab, click the **Virtual Media** tab
Step 5 Select a row from the **Current Mappings** table.
Step 6 Click **Unmap**.

Remapping an Existing Cisco IMC vMedia Image

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Compute** menu.
Step 2 In the **Compute** menu, select a server.
Step 3 In the work pane, click the **Remote Management** tab.
Step 4 In the **Remote Management** tab, click the **Virtual Media** tab
Step 5 Select a row from the **Current Mappings** table.
Step 6 Click **Remap**.

Deleting a Cisco IMC vMedia Image

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Compute** menu.
Step 2 In the **Compute** menu, select a server.
Step 3 In the work pane, click the **Remote Management** tab.
Step 4 In the **Remote Management** tab, click the **Virtual Media** tab
Step 5 Select a row from the **Current Mappings** table.
Step 6 Click **Delete**.

KVM Console

The KVM console is an interface accessible from Cisco IMC that emulates a direct keyboard, video, and mouse (KVM) connection to the server. The KVM console allows you to connect to the server from a remote location.

Instead of using CD/DVD or floppy drives physically connected to the server, the KVM console uses virtual media, which are actual disk drives or disk image files that are mapped to virtual CD/DVD or floppy drives. You can map any of the following to a virtual drive:

- CD/DVD or floppy drive on your computer

- Disk image files (ISO or IMG files) on your computer
- USB flash drive on your computer
- CD/DVD or floppy drive on the network
- Disk image files (ISO or IMG files) on the network
- USB flash drive on the network

You can use the KVM console to install an OS on the server.

Note When launching the KVM Console from Internet Explorer 6 SP1 on Windows Server 2003, the browser will report that it cannot download a required file. If this occurs, click the browser Tools menu and select Internet Options. Click the Advanced tab and, in the Security section, uncheck the checkbox for "Do not save encrypted pages to disk." Launch the KVM Console again.

Launching KVM Console

You can launch the KVM console from either the Home page or from the Remote Management area.

Procedure

Step 1 To launch the console from Home page, in the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Summary**.

Step 3 From the tool bar, click **Launch KVM** and select **Java based KVM** or **HTML based KVM**.

Step 4 Alternatively, in the **Navigation** pane, click the **Compute** menu.

Step 5 In the **Compute** menu, select a server.

Step 6 In the work pane, click the **Remote Management** tab.

Step 7 In the **Remote Management** pane, click the **Virtual KVM** tab.

Step 8 In the **Virtual KVM** tab, click **Launch HTML based KVM console** or **Launch Java based KVM console**.

Step 9 Required: Click the URL link displayed in the pop-up window (HTML based KVM console only) to load the client application. You need to click the link every time you launch the KVM console.

Virtual KVM Console (Java Based)

The KVM console is an interface accessible from Cisco IMC that emulates a direct keyboard, video, and mouse (KVM) connection to the server. It allows you to connect to and control the server from a remote location and to map physical locations to virtual drives that can by accessed by the server during this KVM session.

Important The KVM console requires Java Runtime Environment (JRE) version 1.5.0 or higher.

KVM Tab

This tab provides command line access to the server. The menu options available in this tab are described below.

File Menu

Menu Item	Description
Open	Opens the **Open** dialog box that allows you to select a file and play the video of the screen recording stored in that file.
Capture to File button	Opens the **Save** dialog box that allows you to save the current screen as a JPG image.
Paste Text From Clipboard button	Allows you to copy text from a clipboard to the server using the KVM console.
Paste Text From File button	Allows you to copy text from a remote file to the server using the KVM console.
Exit button	Closes the KVM console.

View Menu

Macros Menu

Choose the keyboard shortcut you want to execute on the remote system.

Power Menu

Menu Item	Description
Power On System button	Powers on the system. This option is disabled when the system is powered on and it is enabled when the system is not powered.
Power Off System button	Powers off the system from the virtual console session. This option is enabled when the system is powered on and disabled when the system is not powered on.
Reset System (warm boot)button	Reboots the system without powering it off. This option is enabled when the system is powered on and disabled when the system is not powered on.

Menu Item	Description
Power Cycle System (cold boot) button	Turns off system and then back on. This option is enabled when the system is powered on and disabled when the system is not powered on.

Boot Device Menu

Name	Description
No Override	Clicking this option enables the host to boot to the first device configured.
Boot Device list	A list of boot devices that the server uses to boot from only for the next server boot, without disrupting the currently configured boot order. Once the server boots from the one time boot device, all its future reboots occur from the previously configured boot order. A maximum of 15 devices are displayed on the KVM console.

Virtual KVM Console

The KVM console is an interface accessible from Cisco IMC that emulates a direct keyboard, video, and mouse (KVM) connection to the server. It allows you to connect to and control the server from a remote location and to map physical locations to virtual drives that can by accessed by the server during this KVM session.

File Menu

Menu Item	Description
Paste Text From Clipboard	Opens the **Paste Text From Clipboard** dialog box that allows you to paste content.
Capture to File	Opens the **Save** dialog box that allows you to save the current screen as a JPG image.
Exit	Closes the KVM console.

View Menu

Menu Item	Description
Keyboard	Displays the virtual keyboard for the KVM console, which you can use to input data.
Refresh	Updates the console display with the server's current video output.
Full Screen	Expands the KVM console so that it fills the entire screen.

Macros Menu

Choose the keyboard shortcut you want to execute on the remote system.

Menu Item	Description
Server Macros menu	Displays the server side macros downloaded from the Cisco IMC, if any. If no server side macros have been downloaded, then the menu item is disabled.
Static Macros menu	Displays a predefined set of macros.
User Defined Macros menu	Displays the user-defined macros that have been created.
Manage	Opens the **Configure User Defined Macros** dialog box, which allows you to create and manage macros. System-defined macros cannot be deleted.

Tools Menu

Menu Item	Description

Session Options	Opens the **Session Options** dialog box that lets you specify:
	• **Scaling**—Specify whether or not you want to maintain the aspect ratio of the screen. Check or uncheck the **Maintain Aspect Ratio** checkbox (checked by default).
	• The mouse acceleration to use on the target system. The default is **Absolute positioning (Windows, Newer Linux & MAC OS X)**. Other options are:
	  • **Relative Positioning, no acceleration**
	  • **Relative Positioning (RHEL, Older Linux)**

Session User List	Opens the **Session User List** dialog box that shows all the user IDs that have an active KVM session.
Chat	Opens the **Chat** box to communicate with other users.
Play Controls	Opens **Cisco KVM Playback** window that allows you to choose a `.dvc` file.

Power Menu

Menu Item	Description
Power On System	Powers on the system. This option is disabled when the system is powered on and it is enabled when the system is not powered.

Menu Item	Description
Power Off System	Powers off the system from the virtual console session. This option is enabled when the system is powered on and disabled when the system is not powered on.
Reset System (warm boot)	Reboots the system without powering it off. This option is enabled when the system is powered on and disabled when the system is not powered on.
Power Cycle System (cold boot)	Turns off system and then back on. This option is enabled when the system is powered on and disabled when the system is not powered on.

Boot Device Menu

Name	Description
No Override	Clicking this option enables the host to boot to the first device configured.
Boot Device list	A list of boot devices that the server uses to boot from only for the next server boot, without disrupting the currently configured boot order. Once the server boots from the one time boot device, all its future reboots occur from the previously configured boot order. A maximum of 15 devices are displayed on the KVM console.

Virtual Media Menu

Name	Description
Activate Virtual Devices	Activates a vMedia session that allows you to attach a drive or image file from your local computer or network.
Create Image **Note** This option is available only if you use the Google Chrome web browser.	Allows you to create an ISO image. Drag and drop files or folders in the **Create Image** dialog box; these files or folders are converted to an ISO image. You can use the **Download ISO Image** button to save the ISO image to your local machine.
Map CD/DVD	You can map a CD or a DVD image from your local machine and map the drive to the image. **Note** This option is available when you click **Activate Virtual Devices**.

Name	Description
Map Removable Disk	You can map a removable disk image from your local machine and map the drive to the image. **Note** This option is available when you click **Activate Virtual Devices**.
Map Floppy Disk	You can map a floppy disk image from your local machine and map the drive to the image. **Note** This option is available when you click **Activate Virtual Devices**.

Help Menu

Name	Description
Help Topics	Clicking this option brings you back to this window.
About KVM Viewer	Displays the version number of the KVM viewer.

Settings

The **Settings** icon is located on the top right hand corner of the HTML KVM viewer window.

Name	Description
Logged in as:	Displays your user role name.
Host Name	Displays the host name.
Log Out	Allows you to log out of the KVM viewer.

Comparison Between Java Based KVM and HTML5 Based KVM

The following table lists the differences between Java based KVM and HTML5 based KVM.

Menu Option	Action	Available in Java Based KVM	Available in HTML5 Based KVM
File	Open	Yes	Yes
	Capture to file	Yes	Yes
	Paste Text from Clipboard	Yes	No
	Paste Text from File	Yes	No
	Exit	Yes	Yes
View	Refresh	Yes	Yes

Menu Option	Action	Available in Java Based KVM	Available in HTML5 Based KVM
	Fit	Yes	No
	Video-Scaling	Yes	No
	Full-Screen	Yes	Yes
	Mini-Mod	Yes	No
Macros	Server Macros	Yes	Yes
	Static Macros	Yes	Yes
	User Defined Macros	Yes	Yes
	Manage	Yes	Yes
Tool	Session Option	Yes	Yes
	Single Cursor	Yes	No
	Stats	Yes	No
	Session User List	Yes	Yes
	Chat	Yes	Yes
	Recorder/Playback Controls	Yes	No
	Export Video	Yes	No
Power	Power On	Yes	Yes
	Power OFF	Yes	Yes
	Reset System	Yes	Yes
	Power Cycle system	Yes	Yes
	Mini-Mod	Yes	Yes
Virtual Media	Create Image	Yes	No
	Activate Virtual Devices	Yes	Yes
	Physical Device Mapping	Yes	No

Configuring the Virtual KVM

Before you begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to configure the virtual KVM.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Compute** menu.

Step 2 In the **Compute** menu, select a server.

Step 3 In the work pane, click the **Remote Management** tab.

Step 4 In the **Remote Management** pane, click the **Virtual KVM** tab.

Step 5 On the **Virtual KVM** tab, complete the following fields:

Name	Description
Enabled check box	If checked, the virtual KVM is enabled. **Note** The virtual media viewer is accessed through the KVM. If you disable the KVM console, Cisco IMC also disables access to all virtual media devices attached to the host.
Max Sessions drop-down list	The maximum number of concurrent KVM sessions allowed. You can select any number between 1 and 4.
Active Sessions field	The number of KVM sessions running on the server.
Remote Port field	The port used for KVM communication.
Enable Video Encryption check box	If checked, the server encrypts all video information sent through the KVM.
Enable Local Server Video check box	If checked, the KVM session is also displayed on any monitor attached to the server.

Step 6 Click **Save Changes**.

Enabling the Virtual KVM

Before you begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to enable the virtual KVM.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Compute** menu.
Step 2 In the **Compute** menu, select a server.
Step 3 In the work pane, click the **Remote Management** tab.
Step 4 In the **Remote Management** pane, click the **Virtual KVM** tab.
Step 5 On the **Virtual KVM** tab, check the **Enabled** check box.
Step 6 Click **Save Changes**.

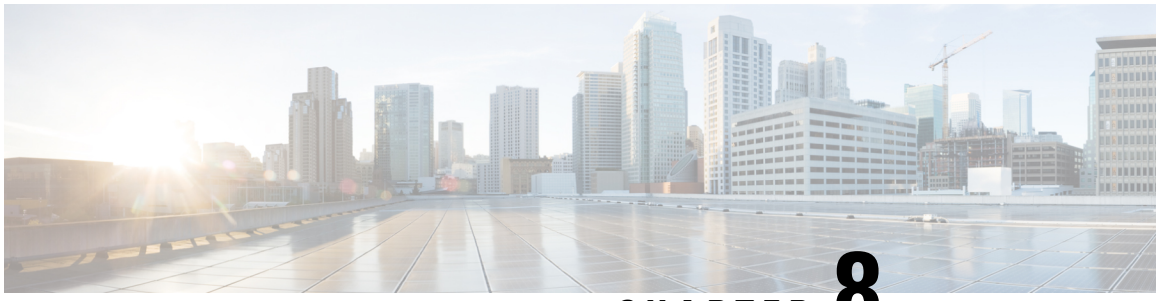
Disabling the Virtual KVM

Before you begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to disable the virtual KVM.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Compute** menu.
Step 2 In the **Compute** menu, select a server.
Step 3 In the work pane, click the **Remote Management** tab.
Step 4 In the **Remote Management** pane, click the **Virtual KVM** tab.
Step 5 On the **Virtual KVM** tab, uncheck the **Enabled** check box.
Step 6 Click **Save Changes**.



CHAPTER 8

Managing User Accounts

This chapter includes the following sections:

Configuring Local Users

The Cisco IMC now implements a strong password policy wherein you are required to follow guidelines and set a strong password when you first log on to the server for the first time. The **Local User** tab displays a **Disable Strong Password** button which allows you to disable the strong password policy and set a password of your choice by ignoring the guidelines. Once you disable the strong password, an **Enable Strong Password** button is displayed. By default, the strong password policy is enabled.

Before you begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to configure or modify local user accounts.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **User Management**.

Step 3 In the **User Management** pane, click the **Local User Management** tab.

Step 4 To configure or modify a local user account, click a row in the **Local User Management** pane and click **Modify User**.

Step 5 In the **Modify User Details** dialog box, update the following properties:

Name	Description
ID field	The unique identifier for the user.

Name	Description
Username field	The username for the user. Enter between 1 and 16 characters.

Role Played field	The role assigned to the user. This can be one of the following:
	• **read-only**—A user with this role can view information but cannot make any changes.
	• **user**—A user with this role can perform the following tasks:
	  • View all information
	  • Manage the power control options such as power on, power cycle, and power off
	  • Launch the KVM console and virtual media
	  • Clear all logs
	  • Ping
	• **admin**—A user with this role can perform all actions available through the GUI, CLI, and IPMI.

Enabled check box	If checked, the user is enabled on the Cisco IMC.

Name	Description

Password field	The password for this user name.
	Click the **Suggest** button to get a system generated password that you may want to use.
	When you move the mouse over the help icon beside the field, the following guidelines to set the password are displayed:
	• The password must have a minimum of 8 and a maximum of 20 characters.
	• The password must not contain the User's Name.
	• The password must contain characters from three of the following four categories:
	  • English uppercase characters (A through Z).
	  • English lowercase characters (a through z).
	  • Base 10 digits (0 through 9).
	  • Non-alphabetic characters (!, @, #, $, %, ^, &, *, -, _,+ , =).
	These guidelines are meant to define a strong password for the user, for security reasons. However, if you want to set a password of your choice ignoring these guidelines, click the **Disable Strong Password** button on the **Local User Management** tab. While setting a password when the strong password option is disabled, you can use between 1- 20 characters.

Confirm New Password field	The password repeated for confirmation.

Step 6 Enter password information.

Step 7 Click **Save Changes**.

Password Expiry

You can set a shelf life for a password, after which it expires. As an administrator, you can set this time in days. This configuration would be common to all users. Upon password expiry, the user is notified on login and would not be allowed to login unless the password is reset.

Note When you downgrade to an older database, existing users are deleted. The database returns to default settings. Previously configured users are cleared and the database is empty, that is, the database has the default username - 'admin' and password - 'password'. Since the server is left with the default user database, the change default credential feature is enabled. This means that when the 'admin' user logs on to the database for the first time after a downgrade, the user must mandatorily change the default credential.

Password Set Time

A 'Password set time' is configured for every existing user, to the time when the migration or upgrade occurred. For new users (users created after an upgrade), the Password Set time is configured to the time when the user was created, and the password is set. For users in general (new and existing), the Password Set Time is updated whenever the password is changed.

Configuring Password Expiry Duration

Before you begin

- You must enable password expiry.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **User Management**.

Step 3 In the **Local User Management** pane (opens by default), click **Password Expiration Details**.

Step 4 In the **Password Expiration Details** dialog box, update the following fields:

Name	Description
Enable Password Expiry check box	Checking this box allows you to configure the **Password Expiry Duration**. Uncheck the check box to disable it.
Password Expiry Duration field	The time period that you can set for the existing password to expire (from the time you set a new password or modify an existing one). The range is between 1 to 3650 days.
Password History field	The number of occurrences when a password was entered. When this is enabled, you cannot repeat a password. Enter a value between 0 to 5. Entering 0 disables this field.
Notification Period field	Notifies the time by when the password expires. Enter a value between 0 to 15 days. Entering 0 disables this field. **Note** The notification period time must be lesser than the password expiry duration.
Grace Period field	Time period till when the existing password can still be used, after it expires. Enter a value between 0 to 5 days. Entering 0 disables this field. **Note** The grace period time must be lesser than the password expiry duration.

Step 5 Click **Save Changes**.

Step 6 Optionally, click **Reset Values** to clear the text fields and reset the values you entered. Click **Restore Defaults** to revert to the default settings.

Enabling Password Expiry

Before you begin

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **User Management**.

Step 3 In the **Local User Management** pane (opens by default), click **Password Expiration Details**.

Step 4 In the **Password Expiration Details** dialog box, check the **Enable Password Expiry** check box.

The **Password Expiry Duration** text field becomes editable and you can configure the duration by entering a number in days.

What to do next

Configure password expiry duration.

LDAP Servers

Cisco IMC supports directory services that organize information in a directory, and manage access to this information. Cisco IMC supports Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP), which stores and maintains directory information in a network. In addition, Cisco IMC supports Microsoft Active Directory (AD). Active Directory is a technology that provides a variety of network services including LDAP-like directory services, Kerberos-based authentication, and DNS-based naming. The Cisco IMC utilizes the Kerberos-based authentication service of LDAP.

When LDAP is enabled in the Cisco IMC, user authentication and role authorization is performed by the LDAP server for user accounts not found in the local user database. The LDAP user authentication format is username@domain.com.

By checking the Enable Encryption check box in the **LDAP Settings** area, you can require the server to encrypt data sent to the LDAP server.

Configuring the LDAP Server

The Cisco IMC can be configured to use LDAP for user authentication and authorization. To use LDAP, configure users with an attribute that holds the user role and locale information for the Cisco IMC. You can use an existing LDAP attribute that is mapped to the Cisco IMC user roles and locales or you can modify the

LDAP schema to add a new custom attribute, such as the CiscoAVPair attribute, which has an attribute ID of 1.3.6.1.4.1.9.287247.1.

Important For more information about altering the schema, see the article at http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/bb727064.aspx.

Note This example creates a custom attribute named CiscoAVPair, but you can also use an existing LDAP attribute that is mapped to the Cisco IMC user roles and locales.

If you are using Group Authorization on the Cisco IMC LDAP configuration, then you can skip Steps 1-4 and perform the steps listed in the *Configuring LDAP Settings and Group Authorization in Cisco IMC* section.

The following steps must be performed on the LDAP server.

Procedure

Step 1 Ensure that the LDAP schema snap-in is installed.

Step 2 Using the schema snap-in, add a new attribute with the following properties:

Properties	Value
Common Name	`CiscoAVPair`
LDAP Display Name	`CiscoAVPair`
Unique X500 Object ID	`1.3.6.1.4.1.9.287247.1`
Description	`CiscoAVPair`
Syntax	`Case Sensitive String`

Step 3 Add the CiscoAVPair attribute to the user class using the snap-in:

a) Expand the **Classes** node in the left pane and type `U` to select the user class.
b) Click the **Attributes** tab and click **Add**.
c) Type `C` to select the CiscoAVPair attribute.
d) Click **OK**.

Step 4 Add the following user role values to the CiscoAVPair attribute, for the users that you want to have access to Cisco IMC:

Role	CiscoAVPair Attribute Value
admin	`shell:roles="admin"`
user	`shell:roles="user"`
read-only	`shell:roles="read-only"`

Note For more information about adding values to attributes, see the article at http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/bb727064.aspx.

What to do next

Use the Cisco IMC to configure the LDAP server.

Configuring LDAP Settings and Group Authorization in Cisco IMC

Before you begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **User Management**.

Step 3 In the **User Management** pane, click **LDAP**.

Step 4 In the **LDAP Settings** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
Enable LDAP check box	If checked, user authentication and role authorization is performed first by the LDAP server, followed by user accounts that are not found in the local user database.
Base DN field	Base Distinguished Name. This field describes where to load users and groups from. It must be in the `dc=domain,dc=com` format for Active Directory servers.
Domain field	The IPv4 domain that all users must be in. This field is required unless you specify at least one Global Catalog server address.
Enable Encryption check box	If checked, the server encrypts all information it sends to the LDAP server.
Enable Binding CA Certificate check box	If checked, allows you to bind the LDAP CA certificate.

Name	Description
Timeout (0 - 180) seconds	The number of seconds the Cisco IMC waits until the LDAP search operation times out. If the search operation times out, Cisco IMC tries to connect to the next server listed on this tab, if one is available. **Note** The value you specify for this field could impact the overall time.
User Search Precedence	Allows you to specify the order of search between the local user database and LDAP user database. This can be one of the following: • **Local User Database** (Default setting) • **LDAP User Database**

Note If you checked the **Enable Encryption** and the **Enable Binding CA Certificate** check boxes, enter the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the LDAP server in the **LDAP Server** field. To resolve the FQDN of the LDAP server, configure the preferred DNS of Cisco IMC network with the appropriate DNS IP address.

Step 5 In the **Configure LDAP Servers** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
Pre-Configure LDAP Servers radio button	If checked, the Active Directory uses the pre-configured LDAP servers.
LDAP Servers fields	
Server	The IP address of the 6 LDAP servers. If you are using Active Directory for LDAP, then servers 1, 2 and 3 are domain controllers, while servers 4, 5 and 6 are Global Catalogs. If you are not Active Directory for LDAP, then you can configure a maximum of 6 LDAP servers. **Note** You can provide the IP address of the host name as well.

Name	Description
Port	The port numbers for the servers. If you are using Active Directory for LDAP, then for servers 1, 2 and 3, which are domain controllers, the default port number is 389. For servers 4, 5 and 6, which are Global Catalogs, the default port number is 3268. LDAPS communication occurs over the TCP 636 port. LDAPS communication to a global catalog server occurs over TCP 3269 port.
Use DNS to Configure LDAP Servers radio button	If checked, you can use DNS to configure access to the LDAP servers.
DNS Parameters fields	
Source	Specifies how to obtain the domain name used for the DNS SRV request. It can be one of the following: • **Extracted**—specifies using domain name extracted-domain from the login ID • **Configured**—specifies using the configured-search domain. • **Configured-Extracted**—specifies using the domain name extracted from the login ID than the configured-search domain.
Domain to Search	A configured domain name that acts as a source for a DNS query. This field is disabled if the source is specified as **Extracted**.
Forest to Search	A configured forest name that acts as a source for a DNS query. This field is disabled if the source is specified as **Extracted**.

Step 6 In the **Binding Parameters** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
Method	It can be one of the following: • **Anonymous**—requires NULL username and password. If this option is selected and the LDAP server is configured for Anonymous logins, then the user can gain access. • **Configured Credentials**—requires a known set of credentials to be specified for the initial bind process. If the initial bind process succeeds, then the distinguished name (DN) of the user name is queried and re-used for the re-binding process. If the re-binding process fails, then the user is denied access. • **Login Credentials**—requires the user credentials. If the bind process fails, the user is denied access. By default, the **Login Credentials** option is selected.
Binding DN	The distinguished name (DN) of the user. This field is editable only if you have selected **Configured Credentials** option as the binding method.
Password	The password of the user. This field is editable only if you have selected **Configured Credentials** option as the binding method.

Step 7 In the **Search Parameters** area, update the following fields:

Name	Description
Filter Attribute	This field must match the configured attribute in the schema on the LDAP server. By default, this field displays **sAMAccountName**.
Group Attribute	This field must match the configured attribute in the schema on the LDAP server. By default, this field displays **memberOf**.

Name	Description
Attribute	An LDAP attribute that contains the role and locale information for the user. This property is always a name-value pair. The system queries the user record for the value that matches this attribute name. The LDAP attribute can use an existing LDAP attribute that is mapped to the Cisco IMC user roles and locales, or can modify the schema such that a new LDAP attribute can be created. For example, **CiscoAvPair**.
Nested Group Search Depth (1-128)	Parameter to search for an LDAP group nested within another defined group in an LDAP group map. The parameter defines the depth of a nested group search.

Step 8 (Optional) In the **Group Authorization** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
LDAP Group Authorization check box	If checked, user authentication is also done on the group level for LDAP users that are not found in the local user database. If you check this box, Cisco IMC enables the **Configure Group** button.
Nested Group Search Depth (1-128)	Parameter to search for an LDAP group nested within another defined group in an LDAP group map. The parameter defines the depth of a nested group search.
Group Name column	The name of the group in the LDAP server database that is authorized to access the server.
Group Domain column	The LDAP server domain the group must reside in.

Role column	The role assigned to all users in this LDAP server group. This can be one of the following:
	• **read-only**—A user with this role can view information but cannot make any changes.
	• **user**—A user with this role can perform the following tasks:
	  • View all information
	  • Manage the power control options such as power on, power cycle, and power off
	  • Launch the KVM console and virtual media
	  • Clear all logs
	  • Ping
	• **admin**—A user with this role can perform all actions available through the GUI, CLI, and IPMI.

Name	Description
Configure button	Configures an active directory group.
Delete button	Deletes an existing LDAP group.

Step 9 Click **Save Changes**.

Setting User Search Precedence

Before you begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.

Step 2 On the **Admin** tab, click **User Management**.

Step 3 In the **User Management** pane, click the **LDAP** tab.

Step 4 In the **LDAP Settings** area's **User Search Precedence** field, select **Local User Database** or **LDAP User Database**.

This field allows you to specify the order of search between the above options. **Local User Database** is the default option.

What to do next

LDAP Certificates Overview

Cisco C-series servers allow an LDAP client to validate a directory server certificate against an installed CA certificate or chained CA certificate during an LDAP binding step. This feature is introduced in the event where anyone can duplicate a directory server for user authentication and cause a security breach due to the inability to enter a trusted point or chained certificate into the Cisco IMC for remote user authentication.

An LDAP client needs a new configuration option to validate the directory server certificate during the encrypted TLS/SSL communication.

Viewing LDAP CA Certificate Status

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **User Management**.

Step 3 In the **User Management** pane, click the **LDAP** tab.

Step 4 In the **Certificate Status** area, view the following fields:

Name	Description
Download Status	This field displays the status of the LDAP CA certificate download.
Export Status	This field displays the status of the LDAP CA certificate export.

Exporting an LDAP CA Certificate

Before you begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to perform this action.

You should have downloaded a signed LDAP CA Certificate before you can export it.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **User Management**.

Step 3 In the **User Management** pane, click the **LDAP** tab.

Step 4 Click the **Export LDAP CA Certificate** link.

The **Export LDAP CA Certificate** dialog box appears.

Name	Description
Export to Remote Location	Selecting this option allows you to choose the certificate from a remote location and export it. Enter the following details: • • **TFTP Server** • **FTP Server** • **SFTP Server** • **SCP Server** • **HTTP Server** **Note** If you chose SCP or SFTP as the remote server type while performing this action, a pop-up window is displayed with the message *Server (RSA) key fingerprint is <server_finger_print _ID> Do you wish to continue?*. Click Yes or No depending on the authenticity of the server fingerprint. The fingerprint is based on the host's public key and helps you to identify or verify the host you are connecting to. • **Server IP/Hostname** field — The IP address or hostname of the server on which the LDAP CA certificate file should be exported. Depending on the setting in the **Download Certificate from** drop-down list, the name of the field may vary. • **Path and Filename** field — The path and filename Cisco IMC should use when downloading the certificate from the remote server. • **Username** field — The username the system should use to log in to the remote server. This field does not apply if the protocol is TFTP or HTTP. • **Password** field — The password for the remote server username. This field does not apply if the protocol is TFTP or HTTP.
Export to Local Desktop	Selecting this option allows you to choose the certificate stored on a drive that is local to the computer and export it.

Step 5 Click **Export Certificate**.

Downloading an LDAP CA Certificate

Before you begin

- You must log in as a user with admin privileges to perform this action.
- You must enable Binding CA Certificate to perform this action.

Note Only CA certificates or chained CA certificates must be used in Cisco IMC. By default, CA certificate is in .cer format. If it is a chained CA certificate, then it needs to be converted to .cer format before downloading it to Cisco IMC.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **User Management**.

Step 3 In the **User Management** pane, click the **LDAP** tab.

Step 4 Click the **Download LDAP CA Certificate** link.

The **Download LDAP CA Certificate** dialog box appears.

Name	Description
Download from remote location radio button	Selecting this option allows you to choose the certificate from a remote location and download it. Enter the following details: • • **TFTP Server** • **FTP Server** • **SFTP Server** • **SCP Server** • **HTTP Server** **Note** If you chose SCP or SFTP as the remote server type while performing this action, a pop-up window is displayed with the message *Server (RSA) key fingerprint is <server_finger_print _ID> Do you wish to continue?*. Click Yes or No depending on the authenticity of the server fingerprint. The fingerprint is based on the host's public key and helps you to identify or verify the host you are connecting to. • **Server IP/Hostname** field — The IP address or hostname of the server on which the LDAP CA certificate file should be stored. Depending on the setting in the **Download Certificate from** drop-down list, the name of the field may vary. • **Path and Filename** field — The path and filename Cisco IMC should use when downloading the file to the remote server. • **Username** field — The username the system should use to log in to the remote server. This field does not apply if the protocol is TFTP or HTTP. • **Password** field — The password for the remote server username. This field does not apply if the protocol is TFTP or HTTP.
Download through browser client radio button	Selecting this option allows you to navigate to the certificate stored on a drive that is local to the computer running the Cisco IMC GUI. When you select this option, Cisco IMC GUI displays a **Browse** button that lets you navigate to the file you want to import.
Paste Certificate content radio button	Selecting this option allows you to copy the entire content of the signed certificate and paste it in the **Paste certificate content** text field. **Note** Ensure the certificate is signed before uploading.
Download Certificate button	Allows you to download the certificate to the server.

Testing LDAP Binding

Before you begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to perform this action.

Note If you checked the **Enable Encryption** and the **Enable Binding CA Certificate** check boxes, enter the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the LDAP server in the LDAP Server field. To resolve the FQDN of the LDAP server, configure the preferred DNS of Cisco IMC network with the appropriate DNS IP address.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **User Management**.

Step 3 In the **User Management** pane, click the **LDAP** tab.

Step 4 Click the **Test LDAP Binding** link.

The **Test LDAP CA Certificate Binding** dialog box appears.

Name	Description
Username field	Enter the user name.
Password field	Enter the corresponding password.

Step 5 Click **Test**.

Deleting an LDAP CA Certificate

Before you begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to perform this action.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **User Management**.

Step 3 In the **User Management** pane, click the **LDAP** tab.

Step 4 Click the **Delete LDAP CA Certificate** link and click **OK** to confirm.

Viewing User Sessions

Procedure

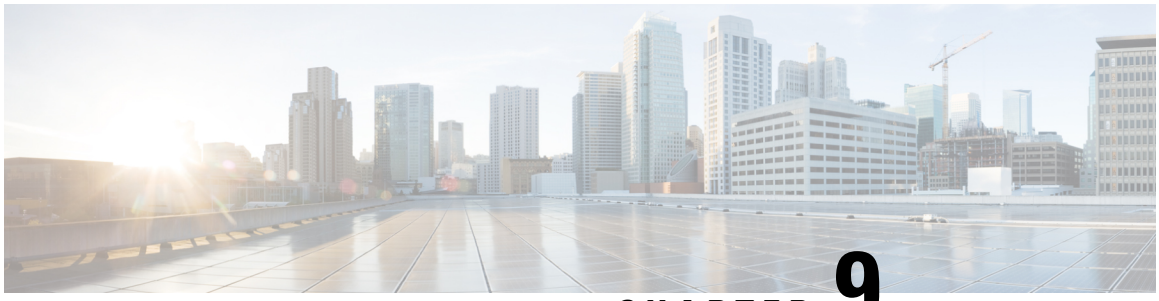
Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **User Management**.

Step 3 In the **User Management** pane, click **Session Management**.

Step 4 In the **Sessions** pane, view the following information about current user sessions:

Name	Description
Terminate Session button	If your user account is assigned the **admin** user role, this option enables you to force the associated user session to end. **Note** You cannot terminate your current session from this tab.
Session ID column	The unique identifier for the session.
User name column	The username for the user.
IP Address column	The IP address from which the user accessed the server. If this is a serial connection, it displays **N/A**.
Type column	The type of session the user chose to access the server. This can be one of the following: • **webgui**— indicates the user is connected to the server using the web UI. • **CLI**— indicates the user is connected to the server using CLI. • **serial**— indicates the user is connected to the server using the serial port.
Action column	This column displays **N/A** when the SOL is enabled and **Terminate** when the SOL is disabled. You can terminate a session by clicking **Terminate** on the web UI.



CHAPTER 9

Configuring Chassis Related Settings

This chapter includes the following sections:

Managing Server Power

Before you begin

You must log in with user or admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Summary**.

Step 3 In the toolbar above the work pane, click the **Host Power** link.

Step 4 From the drop-down list, select one of the following options:

Actions	Description
Power ON	Powers on the chosen server.
Power Off	Powers off the chosen server, even if tasks are running on that server. **Important** If any firmware or BIOS updates are in progress, do not power off or reset the server until those tasks are complete.
Power Cycle	Powers off and powers on chosen server.
Hard Reset	Reboots the chosen server.

Actions	Description
Shut Down	Shuts down the chosen server if the operating system supports that feature.

Pinging a Hostname/IP Address from the Web UI

Before you begin

You must log in with user or admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the toolbar above the work pane, click the **Ping** icon.

Step 2 In the **Ping Details** dialog box, update the following fields:

Actions	Description
***Hostname/IP Address** field	Hostname or IP address you want to reach out to.
***Number of Retries** field	The maximum number of retries allowed to ping the IP address. The default value is 3. The valid range is from 1 to 10.
***Timeout** field	The maximum response time for a pinging activity. The default value is 10 seconds. The valid range is from 1 to 20 seconds.
Ping Status field	Displays results of the pinging activity.
Details button	Displays details of the pinging activity.
Ping button	Pings the IP address.
Cancel button	Closes the dialog box without pinging.

Step 3 Click **Ping**.

Toggling the Locator LEDs

Before you begin

You must log in with user or admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.
Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Summary**.
Step 3 In the toolbar above the work pane, click the **Locator LED** link.
Step 4 Select **Turn On Locator LED** or **Turn Off Locator LED**.

Selecting a Time Zone

Before you begin

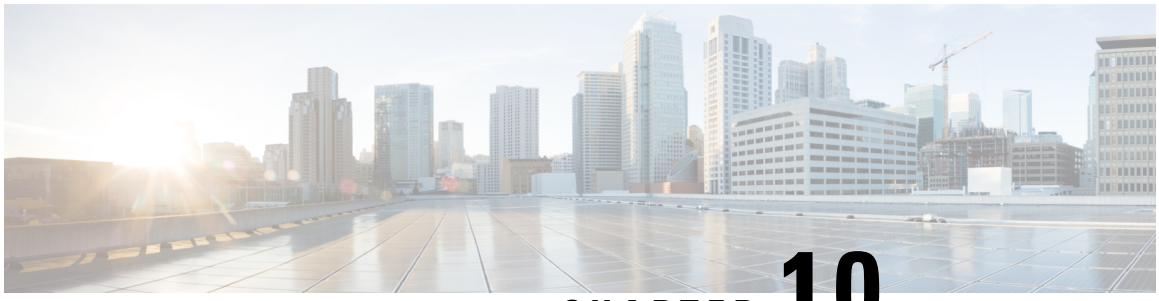
You must log in with user or admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.
Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Summary**.
Step 3 In the **Cisco Integrated Management Controller (Cisco IMC) Information** area, click **Select Timezone**.

Select Timezone screen appears.

Step 4 In the **Select Timezone** pop-up screen, mouse over the map and click on the location to select your time zone or choose your time zone from the **Timezone** drop-down menu.
Step 5 Click **Save**.



CHAPTER 10

Configuring Network-Related Settings

This chapter includes the following sections:

Server NIC Configuration

Server NICs

NIC Mode

The NIC mode setting determines which ports can reach the Cisco IMC. The following network mode options are available, depending on your platform:

- **Dedicated**—The management port that is used to access the Cisco IMC.
- **Cisco Card**—Any port on the adapter card that can be used to access the Cisco IMC. The Cisco adapter card has to be installed in a slot with Network the Communications Services Interface protocol support (NCSI).

NIC Redundancy

The following NIC redundancy options are available, depending on the selected NIC mode and your platform:

- **active-active**—If supported, all ports that are associated with the configured NIC mode operate simultaneously. This feature increases throughput and provides multiple paths to the Cisco IMC.
- **active-standby**—If a port that is associated with the configured NIC mode fails, traffic fails over to one of the other ports associated with the NIC mode.

Note If you choose this option, make sure that all ports associated with the configured NIC mode are connected to the same subnet to ensure that traffic is secure regardless of which port is used.

The available redundancy modes vary depending on the selected network mode and your platform. For the available modes, see the *Hardware Installation Guide* (HIG) for the type of server you are using. The C-Series HIGs are available at the following URL:
http://www.cisco.com/en/US/products/ps10493/prod_installation_guides_list.html

Configuring Server NICs

Configure a server NIC when you want to set the NIC mode and NIC redundancy.

Before you begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to configure the NIC.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Networking**.

Step 3 In the **NIC Properties** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description Cisco IMC
NIC Mode drop-down list	The ports that can be used to access Cisco IMC. This can be one of the following: • **Dedicated**—The management port that is used to access the Cisco IMC. • **Cisco Card**—Any port on the adapter card that can be used to access Cisco IMC. The Cisco adapter card has to be installed in a slot with Network the Communications Services Interface protocol support (NCSI).

Name	Description Cisco IMC
VIC Slot drop-down list	The VIC slot that can be used for management functions in Cisco card mode. This can be one of the following: For C220 M4 servers, VIC slot options are as follows: • **Riser 1**—Slot 1 is selected. • **Riser 2**— Slot 2 is selected. • **FLEX LOM**—Slot 3 (MLOM) is selected. For C240 M4 servers, VIC slot options are as follows: • **Riser 1**—Slot 2 is the primary slot, but you can also use slot 1. • **Riser 2**— Slot 5 is the primary slot, but you can also use slot 4. • **FLEX LOM**—Slot 7 (MLOM) is selected. The following options are available only on some UCS C-Series servers: • **4** • **5** • **9** • **10** **Note** This option is available only on some UCS C-Series servers.

Name	Description Cisco IMC
VIC Slot drop-down list	The VIC slot that can be used for management functions in Cisco card mode. This can be one of the following: For C220 M5 servers, VIC slot options are as follows: • **Riser 1**—Slot 1 is selected. • **Riser 2**— Slot 2 is selected. • **FLEX LOM**—Slot 3 (MLOM) is selected. For C240 M5 servers, VIC slot options are as follows: • **Riser 1**—Slot 2 is the primary slot, but you can also use slot 1. • **Riser 2**— Slot 5 is the primary slot, but you can also use slot 4. • **FLEX LOM**—Slot 7 (MLOM) is selected. The following options are available only on some UCS C-Series servers: • **4** • **5** • **9** • **10** **Note** This option is available only on some UCS C-Series servers.
SIOC Slot	Displays the Cisco IMC network mode. Based on the card present in the System IO Controller (SIOC1), network mode could be either 1 or 2. **Note** This option is available only on some UCS C-Series servers.
NIC Redundancy drop-down list	The available NIC redundancy options depend on the selected NIC mode and the model of the server that you are using. If you do not see a particular option, it is not available for the selected mode or server model. This can be one of the following: • **active-active**—If supported, all ports that are associated with the configured NIC mode operate simultaneously. This feature increases throughput and provides multiple paths to Cisco IMC. • **active-standby**—If a port that is associated with the configured NIC mode fails, traffic fails over to one of the other ports associated with the NIC mode. **Note** If you choose this option, make sure that all ports associated with the configured NIC mode are connected to the same subnet to ensure that traffic is secure regardless of which port is used.

Name	Description Cisco IMC
MAC Address field	The MAC address of the Cisco IMC network interface that is selected in the **NIC Mode** field.

Step 4 Click **Save Changes**.

Common Properties Configuration

Overview to Common Properties Configuration

Hostname

The Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) enhancement is available with the addition of the hostname to the DHCP packet, which can either be interpreted or displayed at the DHCP server side. The hostname, which is now added to the options field of the DHCP packet, sent in the DHCP DISCOVER packet that was initially sent to the DHCP server.

The default hostname of the server is changed from ucs-c2XX to CXXX-YYYYYY, where XXX is the model number and YYYYYY is the serial number of the server. This unique string acts as a client identifier, allows you to track and map the IP addresses that are leased out to Cisco IMC from the DHCP server. The default serial number is provided by the manufacturer as a sticker or label on the server to help you identify the server.

Dynamic DNS

Dynamic DNS (DDNS) is used to add or update the resource records on the DNS server from Cisco IMC. You can enable Dynamic DNS by using either the web UI or CLI. When you enable the DDNS option, the DDNS service records the current hostname, domain name, and the management IP address and updates the resource records in the DNS server from Cisco IMC.

Note The DDNS server deletes the prior resource records (if any) and adds the new resource records to the DNS server if any one of the following DNS configuration is changed:

- Hostname
- Domain name in the LDAP settings
- When DDNS and DHCP are enabled, if the DHCP gets a new IP address or DNS IP or domain name due to a change in a network or a subnet.
- When DHCP is disabled and if you set the static IP address by using CLI or web UI.
- When you enter the **dns-use-dhcp** command.

Dynamic DNS Update Domain— You can specify the domain. The domain could be either main domain or any sub-domain. This domain name is appended to the hostname of the Cisco IMC for the DDNS update.

Configuring Common Properties

Use common properties to describe your server.

Before you begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to configure common properties.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Networking**.

Step 3 In the **Common Properties** area, update the following properties:

a) In the **Management Hostname** field, enter the name of the host.

By default, the hostname appears in CXXX-YYYYYY format, where XXX is the model number and YYYYYY is the serial number of the server.

Note If DHCP is enabled, the DHCP DISCOVER packet sent out will also carry the Cisco IMC hostname in it.

b) Check the **Dynamic DNS** check box.

c) In the **Dynamic DNS Update Domain** field, enter the domain name.

Step 4 Click **Save Changes**.

Configuring IPv4

Before you begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to configure IPv4.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Networking**.

Step 3 In the **IPv4 Properties** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
Enable IPv4 check box	If checked, IPv4 is enabled.
Use DHCP check box	If checked, Cisco IMC uses DHCP.
Management IP Address field	The management IP address. An external virtual IP address that helps manage the CMCs and BMCs.

Name	Description
Subnet Mask field	The subnet mask for the IP address.
Gateway field	The gateway for the IP address.
Obtain DNS Server Addresses from DHCP check box	If checked, Cisco IMC retrieves the DNS server addresses from DHCP.
Preferred DNS Server field	The IP address of the primary DNS server.
Alternate DNS Server field	The IP address of the secondary DNS server.

Step 4 Click **Save Changes**.

Configuring IPv6

Before you begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to configure IPv6.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Networking**.

Step 3 In the **IPv6 Properties** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
Enable IPv6 check box	If checked, IPv6 is enabled.
Use DHCP check box	If checked, the Cisco IMC uses DHCP. **Note** Only stateful DHCP is supported.
Management IP Address field	Management IPv6 address. **Note** Only global unicast addresses are supported.
Prefix Length field	The prefix length for the IPv6 address. Enter a value within the range 1 to 127. The default value is 64.
Gateway field	The gateway for the IPv6 address. **Note** Only global unicast addresses are supported.

Name	Description
Obtain DNS Server Addresses from DHCP check box	If checked, the Cisco IMC retrieves the DNS server addresses from DHCP. **Note** You can use this option only when the **Use DHCP** option is enabled.
Preferred DNS Server field	The IPv6 address of the primary DNS server.
Alternate DNS Server field	The IPv6 address of the secondary DNS server.
Link Local Address field	The link local address for the IPv6 address.

Step 4 Click **Save Changes**.

Connecting to a VLAN

Before you begin

You must be logged in as admin to connect to a VLAN.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Networking**.

Step 3 In the **VLAN Properties** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
Enable VLAN check box	If checked, the Cisco IMC is connected to a virtual LAN. **Note** You can configure a VLAN or a port profile, but you cannot use both. If you want to use a port profile, make sure that this check box is not checked.
VLAN ID field	The VLAN ID.
Priority field	The priority of this system on the VLAN.

Step 4 Click **Save Changes**.

Connecting to a Port Profile

Before you begin

You must be logged in as admin to connect to a port profile.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Networking**.

Step 3 In the **Port Properties** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
Auto Negotiation check box	Using this option, you can either set the network port speed and duplex values for the switch, or allow the system to automatically derive the values from the switch. This option is available for dedicated mode only. • If checked, the network port speed and duplex settings are ignored by the system and Cisco IMC retains the speed at which the switch is configured. • If unchecked, you can configure the network port speed and duplex values.

Name	Description
Admin Mode Area	**Network Port Speed** field The network speed of the port. This can be one of the following: • 10 Mbps • 100 Mbps • 1 Gbps The default value is 100 Mbps. In the **Dedicated** mode, if you disable **Auto Negotiation**, you can configure the network speed and duplex values. **Note** • Before changing the port speed, ensure that the switch you connected to has the same port speed. • Network port speed of 1 Gbps is unavailable on the C220 and C240 M3, and C22 and C24 M3 servers. **Duplex** drop-down list The duplex mode for the Cisco IMC management port. This can be one of the following: • **Half** • **Full** By default, the duplex mode is set to **Full**.
Operation Mode Area	Displays the operation network port speed and duplex values. If you checked the **Auto Negotiation** check box, the network port speed and duplex details of the switch are displayed. If unchecked, the network port speed and duplex values that you set at the **Admin Mode** are displayed.

Step 4 Click **Save Changes**.

Configuring Individual Settings

Before you begin

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Networking**.

Step 3 In the Individual Settings area, review and update the following fields for **CMC 1**, **CMC 2**, **BMC 1** and **BMC 2** in their respective areas:

Name	Description
Hostname field	The user-defined hostname. By default, the hostname appears in CXXX-YYYYYY format, where XXX is the model number and YYYYYY is the serial number of the server.
MAC Address field	The MAC address of the component.
IPv4 Address field	The IPv4 address of the component.
IPv6 Address field	The IPv6 address of the component.
Link Local Address field	The link local address for the component's IPv6 address.

Step 4 Click **Save Changes**.

What to do next

Network Security Configuration

Network Security

The Cisco IMC uses IP blocking as network security. IP blocking prevents the connection between a server or website and certain IP addresses or ranges of addresses. IP blocking effectively bans undesired connections from those computers to a website, mail server, or other Internet servers.

IP banning is commonly used to protect against denial of service (DoS) attacks. Cisco IMC bans IP addresses by setting up an IP blocking fail count.

Configuring Network Security

Configure network security if you want to set up an IP blocking fail count.

Before you begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to configure network security.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Networking** pane, click **Network Security**.

Step 3 In the **IP Blocking Properties** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
Enable IP Blocking check box	Check this box to enable IP blocking.
IP Blocking Fail Count field	The number of times a user can attempt to log in unsuccessfully before the system locks that user out for a specified length of time. The number of unsuccessful login attempts must occur within the time frame specified in the **IP Blocking Fail Window** field. Enter an integer between 3 and 10.
IP Blocking Fail Window field	The length of time, in seconds, in which the unsuccessful login attempts must occur in order for the user to be locked out. Enter an integer between 60 and 120.
IP Blocking Penalty Time field	The number of seconds the user remains locked out if they exceed the maximum number of login attempts within the specified time window. Enter an integer between 300 and 900.

Step 4 In the **IP Filtering** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
Enable IP Filtering check box	Check this box to enable IP filtering.
IP Filter fields	To provide secure access to the server, you can now set a filter to allow only a selected set of IPs to access it. This option provides four slots for storing IP addresses (IP Filter 1, 2, 3, and 4). You can either assign a single IP address or a range of IP addresses while setting the IP filters. Once you set the IP filter, you would be unable to access the server using any other IP address.

Step 5 Click **Save Changes**.

Network Time Protocol Settings

Network Time Protocol Service Setting

By default, when Cisco IMC is reset, it synchronizes the time with the host. With the introduction of the NTP service, you can configure Cisco IMC to synchronize the time with an NTP server. The NTP server does not run in Cisco IMC by default. You must enable and configure the NTP service by specifying the IP/DNS address of at least one server or a maximum of four servers that function as NTP servers or time source servers. When you enable the NTP service, Cisco IMC synchronizes the time with the configured NTP server. The NTP service can be modified only through Cisco IMC.

Note To enable the NTP service, it is preferable to specify the IP address of a server rather than the DNS address.

Configuring Network Time Protocol Settings

Configuring NTP disables the IPMI **Set SEL time** command.

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Networking**.

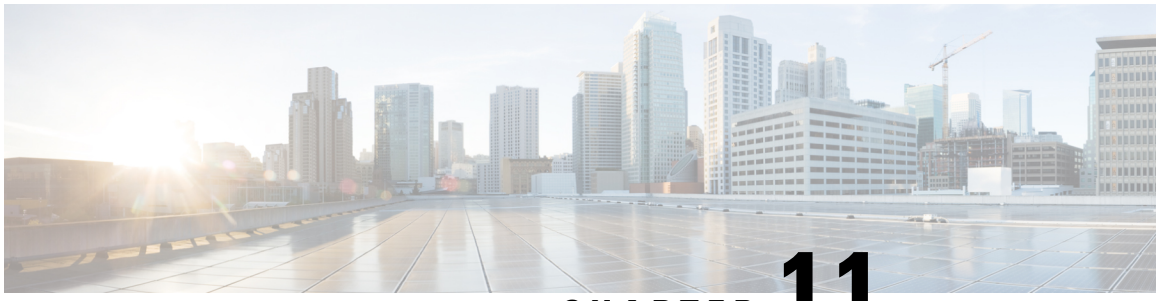
Step 3 In the **Networking** pane, click **NTP Setting**.

Step 4 In the **NTP Settings** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
Enable NTP	Check this box to enable the NTP service.
Server 1	The IP/DNS address of one of the four servers that act as an NTP server or the time source server.
Server 2	The IP/DNS address of one of the four servers that act as an NTP server or the time source server.
Server 3	The IP/DNS address of one of the four servers that act as an NTP server or the time source server.
Server 4	The IP/DNS address of one of the four servers that act as an NTP server or the time source server.

Name	Description
Status message	Indicates whether or not the server is able to synchronize its time with the remote NTP server. This can be one of the following: • **synchronized to NTP server (RefID) at stratum 7**— When the NTP service is enabled and multiple or individual IPv4 or IPv6 based NTP servers are added. • **unsynchronized** — When the NTP service is enabled and an unknown or unreachable server is added. • **NTP service disabled** — When the NTP service is disabled. **Note** If you move the mouse over the help icon, a pop-up is displayed that explains what Stratum stands for.

Step 5 Click **Save Changes**.



CHAPTER 11

Managing Network Adapters

This chapter includes the following sections:

Configuring Network Adapter Properties

Before you begin

- The server must be powered on, or the properties will not display.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Networking** menu.

Step 2 In the **Networking** menu, click **Adapter Card 1** or **Adapter Card 2** or **Adapter Card MLOM**.

Step 3 In the **Adapter Card Properties** area, review the following information:

Name	Description
PCI Slot field	The PCI slot in which the adapter is installed.
Vendor field	The vendor for the adapter.
Product Name field	The product name for the adapter.
Product ID field	The product ID for the adapter.
Serial Number field	The serial number for the adapter.
Version ID field	The version ID for the adapter.

Name	Description
Hardware Revision field	The hardware revision for the adapter.
Cisco IMC Management Enabled field	If this field displays **yes**, then the adapter is functioning in Cisco Card Mode and passing Cisco IMC management traffic through to the server Cisco IMC.
Configuration Pending field	If this field displays **yes**, the adapter configuration has changed in Cisco IMC but these changes have not been communicated to the host operating system. To activate the changes, an administrator must reboot the adapter.
ISCSI Boot Capable field	Whether iSCSI boot is supported on the adapter.
CDN Capable field	Whether CDN is supported on the adapter.
usNIC Capable field	Whether the adapter and the firmware running on the adapter support the usNIC. **Note** usNIC support is not available for C125 servers.
Description field	A user-defined description for the adapter. You can enter between 1 and 63 characters.
Enable FIP Mode check box	If checked, then FCoE Initialization Protocol (FIP) mode is enabled. FIP mode ensures that the adapter is compatible with current FCoE standards. **Note** We recommend that you use this option only when explicitly directed to do so by a technical support representative.

Name	Description
Enable LLDP check box	**Note** For LLDP change to be effective, it is required that you reboot the server. In case of S3260 chassis with two nodes, ensure to reboot the secondary node after making LLDP changes in the primary node. If checked, then Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) enables all the Data Center Bridging Capability Exchange protocol (DCBX) functionality, which includes FCoE, priority based flow control. By default, LLDP option is enabled. **Note** We recommend that you do not disable LLDP option, as it disables all the DCBX functionality. **Note** This option is available only on some UCS C-Series servers.
Enable VNTAG Mode check box	If VNTAG mode is enabled: • vNICs and vHBAs can be assigned to a specific channel. • vNICs and vHBAs can be associated to a port profile. • vNICs can fail over to another vNIC if there are communication problems.

Step 4 In the **Firmware** area, review the following information:

Name	Description
Running Version field	The firmware version that is currently active.
Backup Version field	The alternate firmware version installed on the adapter, if any. The backup version is not currently running. To activate it, administrators can click **Activate Firmware** in the **Actions** area. **Note** When you install new firmware on the adapter, any existing backup version is deleted and the new firmware becomes the backup version. You must manually activate the new firmware if you want the adapter to run the new version.
Startup Version field	The firmware version that will become active the next time the adapter is rebooted.
Bootloader Version field	The bootloader version associated with the adapter card.

Name	Description
Status field	The status of the last firmware activation that was performed on this adapter. **Note** The status is reset each time the adapter is rebooted.

Step 5 In the **External Ethernet Interfaces** area, review the following information:

Note You may not see all the fields listed in the table on your screen. Click the icon on the right top corner and choose columns that you want to view.

Name	Description
Port column	The uplink port ID.
Admin Speed column	The data transfer rate for the port. This can be one of the following: • **1 Gbps** • **10 Gbps** • **40 Gbps** • **4 x 10 Gbps** • **Auto** • **40 Gbps** • **4 x 10 Gbps** **Note** You can edit the Admin Speed column. Select the port for which you want to edit the Admin Speed and click on the icon above the Port column. Click on save to save your changes. You need to choose 40 Gbps as the port speed if you are using a 40 Gbps switch.
Link Training column	Indicates if link training is enabled on the port.
MAC Address column	The MAC address of the uplink port.

Name	Description
Link State column	The current operational state of the uplink port. This can be one of the following: • **Fault** • **Link Up** • **Link Down** • **SFP ID Error** • **SFP Not Installed** • **SFP Security Check Failed** • **Unsupported SFP**
Encap column	The mode in which adapter operates. This can be one of the following: • **CE**—Classical Ethernet mode. • **VNTAG**—VNTAG mode.
Operating Speed column	The operating rate for the port. This can be one of the following: • **1 Gbps** • **10 Gbps** • **40 Gbps** • **4 x 10 Gbps** • **Auto** • **40 Gbps** • **4 x 10 Gbps** **Note** You need to choose 40 Gbps as the port speed if you are using a 40 Gbps switch.
Connector Present column	Indicated whether or not the connector is present. This can be one of the following: • **Yes**—Connector is present. • **No**—Connector not present. **Note** This option is only available for some adapter cards.

Name	Description
Connector Supported column	Indicates whether or not the connector is supported by Cisco. This can be one of the following: • **Yes**—The connector is supported by Cisco. • **No**—The connector is not supported by Cisco. If the connector is not supported then the link will not be up. **Note** This option is only available for some adapter cards.
Connector Type column	The type of the connector. **Note** This option is only available for some adapter cards.
Connector Vendor column	The vendor for the connector. **Note** This option is only available for some adapter cards.
Connector Part Number column	The part number of the connector. **Note** This option is only available for some adapter cards.
Connector Part Revision column	The part revision number of the connector. **Note** This option is only available for some adapter cards.

Viewing Storage Adapter Properties

Before you begin

- The server must be powered on.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.

Step 2 In the **Storage** menu, click the appropriate LSI MegaRAID or HBA controller.

Step 3 In the **Controller** area, the **Controller Info** tab displays by default.

Step 4 In the **Work** pane's **Health/Status** area, review the following information:

Name	Description
Composite Health field	The combined health of the controller, the attached drives, and the battery backup unit. This can be one of the following: • **Good** • **Moderate Fault** • **Severe Fault** • **N/A**
Controller Status field	The current status of the controller. This can be one of the following: • **Optimal** — The controller is functioning properly. • **Failed** — The controller is not functioning. • **Unresponsive** — The controller is down.
RAID Chip Temperature field	Temperature of the controller in degree centigrade.
TTY Log Status field	The current status of the TTY log download. This can be one of the following: • **Not Downloaded** • **In Progress** • **Complete**

Step 5 In the **Firmware Versions** area, review the following information:

Name	Description
Product Name field	The name of the MegaRAID controller.
Serial Number field	The serial number of the MegaRAID controller.
Firmware Package Build field	The active firmware package version number. For the firmware component version numbers, see the **Running Firmware Images** area.

Step 6 In the **PCI Info** area, review the following information:

Name	Description
PCI Slot field	The name of the PCIe slot in which the controller is located.
Vendor ID field	The PCI vendor ID, in hexadecimal.
Device ID field	The PCI device ID, in hexadecimal.

Name	Description
SubVendor ID field	The PCI subvendor ID, in hexadecimal.
SubDevice ID field	The PCI subdevice ID, in hexadecimal.

Step 7 In the **Manufacturing Data** area, review the following information:

Name	Description
Manufactured Date field	The date the MegaRAID card was manufactured, in the format yyy-mm-dd.
Revision No field	The board revision number, if any.

Step 8 In the **Boot Drive** area, review the following information:

Name	Description
Boot Drive field	The number of the boot drive.
Boot Drive is PD field	If this field displays **true**, the boot drive is a physical drive.

Step 9 In the **Running Firmware Images** area, review the following information:

Name	Description
BIOS Version field	The BIOS option PROM version number.
Firmware Version field	The active firmware version number.
Preboot CLI Version field	The pre-boot CLI version number.
WebBIOS Version field	The Web BIOS version number.
NVDATA Version field	The non-volatile data (NVDATA) version number.
Boot Block Version field	The boot block version number.
Boot Version field	The firmware boot loader version number on the LSI controller.

Step 10 In the **Startup Firmware Images** area, review the following information:

Name	Description
Startup BIOS Version field	The BIOS option PROM version that will become active when the host server reboots, if different from the current version.
Startup Firmware Version field	The firmware version that will become active when the host server reboots, if different from the current version.

Name	Description
Startup Preboot CLI Version field	The pre-boot CLI version that will become active when the host server reboots, if different from the current version.
Startup WebBIOS Version field	The Web BIOS version that will become active when the host server reboots, if different from the current version.
Startup NVDATA Version field	The non-volatile data version that will become active when the host server reboots, if different from the current version.
Startup Boot Block Version field	The boot block version that will become active when the host server reboots, if different from the current version.
Startup Boot Version field	The firmware boot loader version that will become active when the host server reboots, if different from the current version.

Step 11 In the **Virtual Drive Count** area, review the following information:

Name	Description
Virtual Drive Count field	The number of virtual drives configured on the controller.
Degraded Drive Count field	The number of virtual drives in a degraded state on the controller.
Offline Drive Count field	The number of virtual drives that have failed on the controller.

Step 12 In the **Physical Drive Count** area, review the following information:

Name	Description
Disk Present Count field	The number of physical drives present on the controller.
Degraded Disk Count field	The number of physical drives in a degraded state on the controller.
Failed Disk Count field	The number of physical drives that have failed on the controller.

Step 13 In the **Settings** area, review the following information:

Name	Description
Predictive Fail Poll Interval field	The number of seconds between predictive failure polls. During each poll, the controller examines the Self-Monitoring Analysis and Reporting Technology (SMART) data on all physical drives to determine if any is about to fail.
Rebuild Rate field	The rate at which the controller rebuilds degraded RAID volumes. This rate is shown as a percentage of the total bandwidth available.
Patrol Read Rate field	The rate at which the controller performs a background read of the physical drives looking for inconsistent data. This rate is shown as a percentage of the total bandwidth available.
Consistency Check Rate field	The rate at which the controller scans the virtual drives looking for redundant data inconsistencies and fixing them. This rate is shown as a percentage of the total bandwidth available.
Reconstruction Rate field	The rate at which virtual drives are reconstructed when the capacity or RAID level needs to be changed. This rate is shown as a percentage of the total bandwidth available.
Cache Flush Interval field	The number of seconds waits before flushing the cache memory to the physical drives.
Max Drives To Spin Up At Once field	The number of drives that can be spun up simultaneously after the server is powered on.
Delay Among Spinup Groups field	The number of seconds to wait before the controller spins up the next set of drives.
Physical Drive Coercion Mode field	Whether the controller rounds the size of physical drives down to a round number. This can be one of the following: • **None**—The controller does not do any rounding. • **128 MB**—Drive sizes are rounded down to the closest multiple of 128 MB. • **1GB**—Drive sizes are rounded down to the closest multiple of 1GB.

Name	Description
Cluster Mode field	If this field displays **true**, the drives on this controller are shared with controllers on other servers.
Battery Warning field	If this field displays **true**, missing battery warnings are disabled.
ECC Bucket Leak Rate field	The error correcting code (ECC) single-bit error bucket leak rate, in minutes. With ECC, the controller increments an error counter when it encounters a single bit error while reading from a physical drive. The controller decrements the error counter each time the number of minutes defined in this field passes. If the error counter reaches a system-defined maximum, the controller sends an event message to the system.
Expose Enclosure Devices field	If this field displays **true**, enclosure devices are visible to the host drivers.
Maintain PD Fail History field	If this field displays **true**, the controller remembers which physical drives were determined to be bad across server reboots.
Enable Copyback on SMART field	If this field displays **true**, the controller copies the contents of the drive to a spare drive if Self-Monitoring Analysis and Reporting Technology (SMART) reports an error.
Enable Copyback to SSD on SMART Error field	If this field displays **true**, the controller copies the contents of an SSD card to a spare card if SMART reports an error.
Native Command Queuing field	If this field displays true, Native Command Queuing (NCQ) is disabled.
JBOD field	If this field displays **true**, JBOD is enabled.
Enable Spin Down of Unconfigured Drives field	If this field displays **true**, the controller spins down unconfigured drives.
Enable SSD Patrol Read field	If this field displays **true**, the controller performs patrol reads on SSD cards.
Auto Enhanced Import field	If this field displays **true**, foreign configurations are automatically imported when the controller boots.

Step 14 In the **Capabilities** area, review the following information:

Name	Description
RAID Levels Supported field	The RAID levels supported by the controller. This can be one or more of the following: • **Raid 0**—Simple striping. • **Raid 1**—Simple mirroring. • **Raid 5**—Striping with parity. • **Raid 1E**—Integrated offset strip mirroring • **Raid 6**—Striping with two parity drives. • **Raid 10**—Spanned mirroring. • **Raid 50**—Spanned striping with parity. • **Raid 60**—Spanned striping with two parity drives. • **Raid srl-03**—Spanned secondary RAID level • **Raid 00**—Spanned striping. • **Raid 1e-rlq0**—Integrated adjacent strip mirroring with no span. • **Raid 1e0-rlq0**—Integrated adjacent strip mirroring with span.

Step 15 In the **HW Configuration** area, review the following information:

Name	Description
SAS Address field	A MegaRAID controller can have up to 16 serial-attached SCSI (SAS) addresses. This field displays the first 8 SAS addresses, if they are in use.
BBU Present field	If this field displays **true**, the battery backup unit is present.
NVRAM Present field	If this field displays **true**, the NVRAM is present.
NVRAM Size field	The size of the NVRAM, in kilobytes.
Serial Debugger Present field	If this field displays **true**, a serial debugger is attached to the RAID card.
Memory Present field	If this field displays **true**, memory is present.
Flash Present field	If this field displays **true**, flash memory is present.
Flash Size field	The size of the flash memory, in megabytes.
Memory Size field	The size of the memory, in megabytes.

Name	Description
Cache Memory Size field	The size of the cache memory, in megabytes.
Number of Backend Ports field	The number of SATA or SAS ports on the controller.

Step 16 In the **Error Counters** area, review the following information:

Name	Description
Memory Correctable Errors field	The number of correctable errors in the controller memory.
Memory Uncorrectable Errors field	The number of uncorrectable errors in the controller memory.

Managing vHBAs

Guidelines for Managing vHBAs

When managing vHBAs, consider the following guidelines and restrictions:

- The Cisco UCS Virtual Interface Cards provide two vHBAs and two vNICs by default. You can create up to 14 additional vHBAs or vNICs on these adapter cards.

  The Cisco UCS 1455 and 1457 Virtual Interface Cards, in non-port channel mode, provide four vHBAs and four vNICs by default. You can create up to 10 additional vHBAs or vNICs on these adapter cards.

  Note If Network Interface Virtualization (NIV) mode is enabled for the adapter, you must assign a channel number to a vHBA when you create it.

- When using the Cisco UCS Virtual Interface Cards in an FCoE application, you must associate the vHBA with the FCoE VLAN. Follow the instructions in the **Modifying vHBA Properties** section to assign the VLAN.
- After making configuration changes, you must reboot the host for settings to take effect.

Viewing vHBA Properties

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Networking** menu.

Step 2 In the **Adapter Card** pane, click the **vHBAs** tab.

Step 3 In the **vHBAs** pane, click **fc0** or **fc1**.

Step 4 In the **General** area of vHBA Properties, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
Name field	The name of the virtual HBA. This name cannot be changed after the vHBA has been created.
Target WWNN field	The WWNN associated with the vHBA. To let the system generate the WWNN, select **AUTO**. To specify a WWNN, click the second radio button and enter the WWNN in the corresponding field.
Target WWPN field	The WWPN associated with the vHBA. To let the system generate the WWPN, select **AUTO**. To specify a WWPN, click the second radio button and enter the WWPN in the corresponding field.
FC SAN Boot check box	If checked, the vHBA can be used to perform a SAN boot.
Enable Persistent LUN Binding check box	If checked, any LUN ID associations are retained in memory until they are manually cleared.
Uplink Port field	The uplink port associated with the vHBA. **Note** This value cannot be changed for the system-defined vHBAs fc0 and fc1.
MAC Address field	The MAC address associated with the vHBA. To let the system generate the MAC address, select **AUTO**. To specify an address, click the second radio button and enter the MAC address in the corresponding field.
Default VLAN field	If there is no default VLAN for this vHBA, click **NONE**. Otherwise, click the second radio button and enter a VLAN ID between 1 and 4094 in the field.
Class of Service drop-down list	The CoS for the vHBA. Select an integer between 0 and 6, with 0 being lowest priority and 6 being the highest priority. **Note** This option cannot be used in VNTAG mode.
Rate Limit field	The data rate limit for traffic on this vHBA, in Mbps. If you want this vHBA to have an unlimited data rate, select **OFF**. Otherwise, click the second radio button and enter an integer between 1 and 10,000. **Note** This option cannot be used in VNTAG mode.

Name	Description
PCIe Device Order field	The order in which this vHBA will be used. To let the system set the order, select **ANY**. To specify an order, select the second radio button and enter an integer between 0 and 17.
EDTOV field	The error detect timeout value (EDTOV), which is the number of milliseconds to wait before the system assumes that an error has occurred. Enter an integer between 1,000 and 100,000. The default is 2,000 milliseconds.
RATOV field	The resource allocation timeout value (RATOV), which is the number of milliseconds to wait before the system assumes that a resource cannot be properly allocated. Enter an integer between 5,000 and 100,000. The default is 10,000 milliseconds.
Max Data Field Size field	The maximum size of the Fibre Channel frame payload bytes that the vHBA supports. Enter an integer between 256 and 2112.
Channel Number field	The channel number that will be assigned to this vHBA. Enter an integer between 1 and 1,000. **Note** VNTAG mode is required for this option.
Port Profile drop-down list	The port profile that should be associated with the vHBA, if any. This field displays the port profiles defined on the switch to which this server is connected. **Note** VNTAG mode is required for this option.

Step 5 In the **Error Recovery** area, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
Enable FCP Error Recovery check box	If checked, the system uses FCP Sequence Level Error Recovery protocol (FC-TAPE).
Link Down Timeout field	The number of milliseconds the uplink port should be offline before it informs the system that the uplink port is down and fabric connectivity has been lost. Enter an integer between 0 and 240,000.
Port Down I/O Retries field	The number of times an I/O request to a port is returned because the port is busy before the system decides the port is unavailable. Enter an integer between 0 and 255.

Name	Description
I/O Timeout Retry field	The time period till which the system waits for timeout before retrying. When a disk does not respond for I/O within the defined timeout period, the driver aborts the pending command, and resends the same I/O after the timer expires. Enter an integer between 1 and 59.
Port Down Timeout field	The number of milliseconds a remote Fibre Channel port should be offline before informing the SCSI upper layer that the port is unavailable. Enter an integer between 0 and 240,000.

Step 6 In the **Fibre Channel Interrupt** area, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
Interrupt Mode drop-down list	The preferred driver interrupt mode. This can be one of the following: • **MSIx**—Message Signaled Interrupts (MSI) with the optional extension. This is the recommended option. • **MSI**—MSI only. • **INTx**—PCI INTx interrupts.

Step 7 In the **Fibre Channel Port** area, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
I/O Throttle Count field	The number of I/O operations that can be pending in the vHBA at one time. Enter an integer between 1 and 1,024.
LUNs per Target field	The maximum number of LUNs that the driver will export. This is usually an operating system platform limitation. Enter an integer between 1 and 1,024. The recommended value is 1024.
LUN Queue Depth field	The number of commands that the HBA can send or receive in a single chunk per LUN. This parameter adjusts the initial queue depth for all LUNs on the adapter. Default value is 20 for physical miniports and 250 for virtual miniports.

Step 8 In the **Fibre Channel Port FLOGI** area, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
FLOGI Retries field	The number of times that the system tries to log in to the fabric after the first failure. To specify an unlimited number of retries, select the **INFINITE** radio button. Otherwise select the second radio button and enter an integer into the corresponding field.

Name	Description
FLOGI Timeout field	The number of milliseconds that the system waits before it tries to log in again. Enter an integer between 1,000 and 255,000.

Step 9 In the **Fibre Channel Port PLOGI** area, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
PLOGI Retries field	The number of times that the system tries to log in to a port after the first failure. Enter an integer between 0 and 255.
PLOGI Timeout field	The number of milliseconds that the system waits before it tries to log in again. Enter an integer between 1,000 and 255,000.

Step 10 In the **SCSI I/O** area, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
CDB Transmit Queue Count field	The number of SCSI I/O queue resources the system should allocate. Enter an integer between 1 and 8.
CDB Transmit Queue Ring Size field	The number of descriptors in each SCSI I/O queue. Enter an integer between 64 and 512.

Step 11 In the **Receive/Transmit Queues** area, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
FC Work Queue Ring Size field	The number of descriptors in each transmit queue. Enter an integer between 64 and 128.
FC Receive Queue Ring Size field	The number of descriptors in each receive queue. Enter an integer between 64 and 128.

Modifying vHBA Properties

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Networking** menu.

Step 2 In the **Adapter Card** pane, click the **vHBAs** tab.

Step 3 In the **vHBAs** pane, click **fc0** or **fc1**.

Step 4 In the **General** area, update the following fields:

Name	Description
Name field	The name of the virtual HBA. This name cannot be changed after the vHBA has been created.
Target WWNN field	The WWNN associated with the vHBA. To let the system generate the WWNN, select **AUTO**. To specify a WWNN, click the second radio button and enter the WWNN in the corresponding field.
Target WWPN field	The WWPN associated with the vHBA. To let the system generate the WWPN, select **AUTO**. To specify a WWPN, click the second radio button and enter the WWPN in the corresponding field.
FC SAN Boot check box	If checked, the vHBA can be used to perform a SAN boot.
Enable Persistent LUN Binding check box	If checked, any LUN ID associations are retained in memory until they are manually cleared.
Uplink Port field	The uplink port associated with the vHBA. **Note** This value cannot be changed for the system-defined vHBAs fc0 and fc1.
MAC Address field	The MAC address associated with the vHBA. To let the system generate the MAC address, select **AUTO**. To specify an address, click the second radio button and enter the MAC address in the corresponding field.
Default VLAN field	If there is no default VLAN for this vHBA, click **NONE**. Otherwise, click the second radio button and enter a VLAN ID between 1 and 4094 in the field.
Class of Service drop-down list	The CoS for the vHBA. Select an integer between 0 and 6, with 0 being lowest priority and 6 being the highest priority. **Note** This option cannot be used in VNTAG mode.
Rate Limit field	The data rate limit for traffic on this vHBA, in Mbps. If you want this vHBA to have an unlimited data rate, select **OFF**. Otherwise, click the second radio button and enter an integer between 1 and 10,000. **Note** This option cannot be used in VNTAG mode.

Name	Description
PCIe Device Order field	The order in which this vHBA will be used. To let the system set the order, select **ANY**. To specify an order, select the second radio button and enter an integer between 0 and 17.
EDTOV field	The error detect timeout value (EDTOV), which is the number of milliseconds to wait before the system assumes that an error has occurred. Enter an integer between 1,000 and 100,000. The default is 2,000 milliseconds.
RATOV field	The resource allocation timeout value (RATOV), which is the number of milliseconds to wait before the system assumes that a resource cannot be properly allocated. Enter an integer between 5,000 and 100,000. The default is 10,000 milliseconds.
Max Data Field Size field	The maximum size of the Fibre Channel frame payload bytes that the vHBA supports. Enter an integer between 256 and 2112.
Channel Number field	The channel number that will be assigned to this vHBA. Enter an integer between 1 and 1,000. **Note** VNTAG mode is required for this option.
Port Profile drop-down list	The port profile that should be associated with the vHBA, if any. This field displays the port profiles defined on the switch to which this server is connected. **Note** VNTAG mode is required for this option.

Step 5 In the **Error Recovery** area, update the following fields:

Name	Description
Enable FCP Error Recovery check box	If checked, the system uses FCP Sequence Level Error Recovery protocol (FC-TAPE).
Link Down Timeout field	The number of milliseconds the uplink port should be offline before it informs the system that the uplink port is down and fabric connectivity has been lost. Enter an integer between 0 and 240,000.
Port Down I/O Retries field	The number of times an I/O request to a port is returned because the port is busy before the system decides the port is unavailable. Enter an integer between 0 and 255.

Name	Description
I/O Timeout Retry field	The time period till which the system waits for timeout before retrying. When a disk does not respond for I/O within the defined timeout period, the driver aborts the pending command, and resends the same I/O after the timer expires. Enter an integer between 1 and 59.
Port Down Timeout field	The number of milliseconds a remote Fibre Channel port should be offline before informing the SCSI upper layer that the port is unavailable. Enter an integer between 0 and 240,000.

Step 6 In the **Fibre Channel Interrupt** area, update the following fields:

Name	Description
Interrupt Mode drop-down list	The preferred driver interrupt mode. This can be one of the following: • **MSIx**—Message Signaled Interrupts (MSI) with the optional extension. This is the recommended option. • **MSI**—MSI only. • **INTx**—PCI INTx interrupts.

Step 7 In the **Fibre Channel Port** area, update the following fields:

Name	Description
I/O Throttle Count field	The number of I/O operations that can be pending in the vHBA at one time. Enter an integer between 1 and 1,024.
LUNs per Target field	The maximum number of LUNs that the driver will export. This is usually an operating system platform limitation. Enter an integer between 1 and 1,024. The recommended value is 1024.
LUN Queue Depth field	The number of commands that the HBA can send or receive in a single chunk per LUN. This parameter adjusts the initial queue depth for all LUNs on the adapter. Default value is 20 for physical miniports and 250 for virtual miniports.

Step 8 In the **Fibre Channel Port FLOGI** area, update the following fields:

Name	Description
FLOGI Retries field	The number of times that the system tries to log in to the fabric after the first failure. To specify an unlimited number of retries, select the **INFINITE** radio button. Otherwise select the second radio button and enter an integer into the corresponding field.

Name	Description
FLOGI Timeout field	The number of milliseconds that the system waits before it tries to log in again. Enter an integer between 1,000 and 255,000.

Step 9 In the **Fibre Channel Port PLOGI** area, update the following fields:

Name	Description
PLOGI Retries field	The number of times that the system tries to log in to a port after the first failure. Enter an integer between 0 and 255.
PLOGI Timeout field	The number of milliseconds that the system waits before it tries to log in again. Enter an integer between 1,000 and 255,000.

Step 10 In the **SCSI I/O** area, update the following fields:

Name	Description
CDB Transmit Queue Count field	The number of SCSI I/O queue resources the system should allocate. Enter an integer between 1 and 8.
CDB Transmit Queue Ring Size field	The number of descriptors in each SCSI I/O queue. Enter an integer between 64 and 512.

Step 11 In the **Receive/Transmit Queues** area, update the following fields:

Name	Description
FC Work Queue Ring Size field	The number of descriptors in each transmit queue. Enter an integer between 64 and 128.
FC Receive Queue Ring Size field	The number of descriptors in each receive queue. Enter an integer between 64 and 128.

Step 12 Click **Save Changes**.

Creating a vHBA

The Cisco UCS Virtual Interface Cards provide two vHBAs and two vNICs by default. You can create up to 14 additional vHBAs or vNICs on these adapter cards.

The Cisco UCS 1455 and 1457 Virtual Interface Cards, in non-port channel mode, provide four vHBAs and four vNICs by default. You can create up to 10 additional vHBAs or vNICs on these adapter cards.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Networking** menu.

Step 2 In the **Adapter Card** pane, click the **vHBAs** tab.

Step 3 In the **Host Fibre Channel Interfaces** area, choose one of these actions:

- To create a vHBA using default configuration settings, click **Add vHBA**.
- To create a vHBA using the same configuration settings as an existing vHBA, select that vHBA and click **Clone vHBA**.

The **Add vHBA** dialog box appears.

Step 4 In the **Add vHBA** dialog box, enter a name for the vHBA in the **Name** entry box.

Step 5 Click **Add vHBA**.

What to do next

- Reboot the server to create the vHBA.
- If configuration changes are required, configure the new vHBA as described in Modifying vHBA Properties, on page 163.

Deleting a vHBA

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Networking** menu.

Step 2 In the **Adapter Card** pane, click the **vHBAs** tab.

Step 3 In the **Host Fibre Channel Interfaces** area, select a vHBA or vHBAs from the table.

Note You cannot delete either of the two default vHBAs, **fc0** or **fc1**.

Step 4 Click **Delete vHBAs** and click **OK** to confirm.

vHBA Boot Table

In the vHBA boot table, you can specify up to four LUNs from which the server can boot.

Creating a Boot Table Entry

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Networking** menu.

Step 2 In the **Adapter Card** pane, click the **vHBAs** tab.

Step 3 In the Fibre Channel Interfaces area, scroll down to the **Boot Table** area.

Step 4 Click the **Add Boot Entry** button to open the **Add Boot Entry** dialog box.

Step 5 In the **Add Boot Entry** dialog box, review the following information and perform the actions specified:

Name	Description
Target WWPN field	The World Wide Port Name (WWPN) that corresponds to the location of the boot image. Enter the WWPN in the format **hh:hh:hh:hh:hh:hh:hh:hh**.
LUN ID field	The LUN ID that corresponds to the location of the boot image. Enter an ID between 0 and 255.
Add Boot Entry button	Adds the specified location to the boot table.
Reset Values button	Clears the values currently entered in the fields.
Cancel button	Closes the dialog box without saving any changes made while the dialog box was open.

Deleting a Boot Table Entry

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Networking** menu.

Step 2 In the **Adapter Card** pane, click the **vHBAs** tab.

Step 3 In the Fibre Channel Interfaces area, scroll down to the **Boot Table** area.

Step 4 In the **Boot Table** area, click the entry to be deleted.

Step 5 Click **Delete Boot Entry** and click **OK** to confirm.

vHBA Persistent Binding

Persistent binding ensures that the system-assigned mapping of Fibre Channel targets is maintained after a reboot.

Viewing Persistent Bindings

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Networking** menu.

Step 2 In the **Adapter Card** pane, click the **vHBAs** tab.

Step 3 In the **vHBAs** pane, click **fc0** or **fc1**.

Step 4 In the **Persistent Bindings** dialog box, review the following information:

Name	Description
Index column	The unique identifier for the binding.
Target WWPN column	The target World Wide Port Name with which the binding is associated.
Host WWPN column	The host World Wide Port Name with which the binding is associated.
Bus ID column	The bus ID with which the binding is associated.
Target ID column	The target ID on the host system with which the binding is associated.
Rebuild Persistent Bindings button	Clears all unused bindings and resets the ones that are in use.
Close button	Closes the dialog box and saves your changes.

Step 5 Click **Close**.

Rebuilding Persistent Bindings

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Networking** menu.

Step 2 In the **Adapter Card** pane, click the **vHBAs** tab.

Step 3 In the **vHBAs** pane, click **fc0** or **fc1**.

Step 4 In the Fibre Channel Interfaces area, scroll down to the **Persistent Bindings** area.

Step 5 Click the **Rebuild Persistent Bindings** button.

Step 6 Click **OK** to confirm.

Managing vNICs

Guidelines for Managing vNICs

When managing vNICs, consider the following guidelines and restrictions:

- The Cisco UCS Virtual Interface Cards provide two vHBAs and two vNICs by default. You can create up to 14 additional vHBAs or vNICs on these adapter cards.

The Cisco UCS 1455 and 1457 Virtual Interface Cards, in non-port channel mode, provide four vHBAs and four vNICs by default. You can create up to 10 additional vHBAs or vNICs on these adapter cards.

Note If Network Interface Virtualization (NIV) mode is enabled for the adapter, you must assign a channel number to a vNIC when you create it.

- After making configuration changes, you must reboot the host for settings to take effect.

Cisco C-series servers use Remote Direct Memory Access (RDMA) over Converged Ethernet (RoCE) for packet transfers. RoCE defines the mechanism of performing RDMA over ethernet, based on the similar mechanism of RDMA over Infiniband. However, RoCE, with its performance oriented characteristics, delivers a superior performance compared to traditional network socket implementation because of the lower latency, lower CPU utilization and higher utilization of network bandwidth. RoCE meets the requirement of moving large amount of data across networks very efficiently.

The RoCE firmware requires the following configuration parameters provided by Cisco UCS Manager for better vNIC performance:

- Queue Pairs
- Memory Regions
- Resource Groups

Guidelines and Limitations for SMB Direct with RoCE

- Microsoft SMB Direct with RoCE is supported:
  - On Windows 2012 R2.
  - On Windows 2016.
- Cisco UCS C-Series server does not support more than 4 RoCE-enabled vNICs per adapter.
- Cisco UCS C-Series server does not support RoCE with NVGRE, VXLAN, VMQ, or usNIC.
- Maximum number of queue pairs per adapter is 8192.
- Maximum number of memory regions per adapter is 524288.
- RoCE configuration is supported between Cisco adapters. Interoperability between Cisco adapters and third party adapters is not supported.

Important It is required to configure the no-drop QOS policy settings at the switches in the RDMA traffic path.

Viewing vNIC Properties

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Networking** menu.

Step 2 In the **Adapter Card** pane, click the **vNICs** tab.

Step 3 In the **vNICs** pane, click **eth0** or **eth1**.

Step 4 In the **Ethernet Interfaces** pane's **vNIC Properties** area, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
Name field	The name for the virtual NIC. This name cannot be changed after the vNIC has been created.
CDN field	The Consistent Device Name (CDN) that you can assign to the ethernet vNICs on the VIC cards. Assigning a specific CDN to a device helps in identifying it on the host OS. **Note** This feature works only when the **CDN Support for VIC** token is enabled in the BIOS.
MTU field	The maximum transmission unit, or packet size, that this vNIC accepts. Enter an integer between 1500 and 9000.
Uplink Port drop-down list	The uplink port associated with this vNIC. All traffic for this vNIC goes through this uplink port.
MAC Address field	The MAC address associated with the vNIC. To let the adapter select an available MAC address from its internal pool, select **Auto**. To specify an address, click the second radio button and enter the MAC address in the corresponding field.
Class of Service drop-down list	The class of service to associate with traffic from this vNIC. Select an integer between 0 and 6, with 0 being lowest priority and 6 being the highest priority. **Note** This option cannot be used in VNTAG mode.
Trust Host CoS check box	Check this box if you want the vNIC to use the class of service provided by the host operating system.
PCI Order field	The order in which this vNIC will be used. To specify an order, enter an integer within the displayed range.
Default VLAN field	If there is no default VLAN for this vNIC, click **NONE**. Otherwise, click the second radio button and enter a VLAN ID between 1 and 4094 in the field. **Note** This option cannot be used in VNTAG mode.

Name	Description
VLAN Mode drop-down list	If you want to use VLAN trunking, select **TRUNK**. Otherwise, select **ACCESS**. **Note** This option cannot be used in VNTAG mode.
Rate Limit field	If you want this vNIC to have an unlimited data rate, select OFF. Otherwise, click the second radio button and enter a rate limit in the associated field. Enter an integer between 1 and 10,000 Mbps. For VIC 13xx controllers, you can enter an integer between 1 and 40,000 Mbps. For VIC 1455 and 1457 controllers: • If the adapter is connected to 25 Gbps link on a Switch, then you can enter an integer between 1 to 25,000 Mbps for the **Rate Limit** field. • If the adapter is connected to 10 Gbps link on a Switch, then you can enter an integer between 1 to 10,000 Mbps for the **Rate Limit** field. For VIC 1495 and 1497 controllers: • If the adapter is connected to 40 Gbps link on a switch, then you can enter an integer between 1 to 40,000 Mbps for the **Rate Limit** field. • If the adapter is connected to 100 Gbps link on a switch, then you can enter an integer between 1 to 100,000 Mbps for the **Rate Limit** field. **Note** This option cannot be used in VNTAG mode.
Enable PXE Boot check box	Check this box if the vNIC can be used to perform a PXE boot.
Channel Number field	Select the channel number that will be assigned to this vNIC. **Note** VNTAG mode is required for this option.
PCI Link field	The link through which vNICs can be connected. These are the following values: • **0** - The first cross-edged link where the vNIC is placed. • **1** - The second cross-edged link where the vNIC is placed. **Note** • This option is available only on some Cisco UCS C-Series servers.

Name	Description
Port Profile drop-down list	Select the port profile that should be associated with the vNIC. This field displays the port profiles defined on the switch to which this server is connected. **Note** VNTAG mode is required for this option.
Enable Uplink Failover check box	Check this box if traffic on this vNIC should fail over to the secondary interface if there are communication problems. **Note** VNTAG mode is required for this option.
Enable VMQ check box	Check this box to enable Virtual Machine Queue (VMQ). **Note** Ensure that VMQ is not enabled when SR-IOV or netflow option is enabled on the adapter. This option is available only on some Cisco UCS C-Series servers.
Enable aRFS check box	Check this box to enable Accelerated Receive Flow steering (aRFS). This option is available only on some Cisco UCS C-Series servers.
Enable NVGRE check box	Check this box to enable Network Virtualization using Generic Routing Encapsulation. • This option is available only on some Cisco UCS C-Series servers. • This option is available only on C-Series servers with Cisco VIC 1385 cards.
Enable VXLAN check box	Check this box to enable Virtual Extensible LAN. • This option is available only on some Cisco UCS C-Series servers. • This option is available only on C-Series servers with Cisco VIC 1385 and VIC 14xx cards.
Advanced Filter check box	Check this box to enable advanced filter options in vNICs.
Failback Timeout field	After a vNIC has started using its secondary interface, this setting controls how long the primary interface must be available before the system resumes using the primary interface for the vNIC. Enter a number of seconds between 0 and 600. **Note** VNTAG mode is required for this option.

Step 5 In the **Ethernet Interrupt** area, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
Interrupt Count field	The number of interrupt resources to allocate. In general, this value should be equal to the number of completion queue resources. Enter an integer between 1 and 514.
Coalescing Time field	The time to wait between interrupts or the idle period that must be encountered before an interrupt is sent. Enter an integer between 1 and 65535. To turn off interrupt coalescing, enter 0 (zero) in this field.
Coalescing Type drop-down list	This can be one of the following: • **MIN**—The system waits for the time specified in the **Coalescing Time** field before sending another interrupt event. • **IDLE**—The system does not send an interrupt until there is a period of no activity lasting as least as long as the time specified in the **Coalescing Time** field.
Interrupt Mode drop-down list	The preferred driver interrupt mode. This can be one of the following: • **MSI-X**—Message Signaled Interrupts (MSI) with the optional extension. This is the recommended option. • **MSI**—MSI only. • **INTx**—PCI INTx interrupts.

Step 6 In the **Ethernet Receive Queue** area, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
Receive Queue Count field	The number of receive queue resources to allocate. Enter an integer between 1 and 256.
Receive Queue Ring Size field	The number of descriptors in each receive queue. Enter an integer between 64 and 4096.

Step 7 In the **Ethernet Transmit Queue** area, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
Transmit Queue Count field	The number of transmit queue resources to allocate. Enter an integer between 1 and 256.
Transmit Queue Ring Size field	The number of descriptors in each transmit queue. Enter an integer between 64 and 4096.

Step 8 In the **Completion Queue** area, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
Completion Queue Count field	The number of completion queue resources to allocate. In general, the number of completion queue resources you should allocate is equal to the number of transmit queue resources plus the number of receive queue resources. Enter an integer between 1 and 512.
Completion Queue Ring Size field	The number of descriptors in each completion queue. This value cannot be changed.

Step 9 In the **TCP Offload** area, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
Enable TCP Segmentation Offload check box	If checked, the CPU sends large TCP packets to the hardware to be segmented. This option may reduce CPU overhead and increase throughput rate. If cleared, the CPU segments large packets. **Note** This option is also known as Large Send Offload (LSO).
Enable TCP Rx Offload Checksum Validation check box	If checked, the CPU sends all packet checksums to the hardware for validation. This option may reduce CPU overhead. If cleared, the CPU validates all packet checksums.
Enable TCP Tx Offload Checksum Generation check box	If checked, the CPU sends all packets to the hardware so that the checksum can be calculated. This option may reduce CPU overhead. If cleared, the CPU calculates all packet checksums.
Enable Large Receive check box	If checked, the hardware reassembles all segmented packets before sending them to the CPU. This option may reduce CPU utilization and increase inbound throughput. If cleared, the CPU processes all large packets.

Step 10 In the **Receive Side Scaling** area, review the information in the following fields:

Name	Description
Enable TCP Receive Side Scaling check box	Receive Side Scaling (RSS) distributes network receive processing across multiple CPUs in multiprocessor systems. If checked, network receive processing is shared across processors whenever possible. If cleared, network receive processing is always handled by a single processor even if additional processors are available.
Enable IPv4 RSS check box	If checked, RSS is enabled on IPv4 networks.
Enable TCP-IPv4 RSS check box	If checked, RSS is enabled for TCP transmissions across IPv4 networks.

Name	Description
Enable IPv6 RSS check box	If checked, RSS is enabled on IPv6 networks.
Enable TCP-IPv6 RSS check box	If checked, RSS is enabled for TCP transmissions across IPv6 networks.
Enable IPv6 Extension RSS check box	If checked, RSS is enabled for IPv6 extensions.
Enable TCP-IPv6 Extension RSS check box	If checked, RSS is enabled for TCP transmissions across IPv6 networks.

Modifying vNIC Properties

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Networking** menu.

Step 2 In the **Adapter Card** pane, click the **vNICs** tab.

Step 3 In the **vNICs** pane, click **eth0** or **eth1**.

Step 4 In the **Ethernet Interfaces** pane's **vNIC Properties** area, update the following fields:

Name	Description
Name field	The name for the virtual NIC. This name cannot be changed after the vNIC has been created.
CDN field	The Consistent Device Name (CDN) that you can assign to the ethernet vNICs on the VIC cards. Assigning a specific CDN to a device helps in identifying it on the host OS. **Note** This feature works only when the **CDN Support for VIC** token is enabled in the BIOS.
MTU field	The maximum transmission unit, or packet size, that this vNIC accepts. Enter an integer between 1500 and 9000.
Uplink Port drop-down list	The uplink port associated with this vNIC. All traffic for this vNIC goes through this uplink port.
MAC Address field	The MAC address associated with the vNIC. To let the adapter select an available MAC address from its internal pool, select **Auto**. To specify an address, click the second radio button and enter the MAC address in the corresponding field.

Name	Description
Class of Service drop-down list	The class of service to associate with traffic from this vNIC. Select an integer between 0 and 6, with 0 being lowest priority and 6 being the highest priority. **Note** This option cannot be used in VNTAG mode.
Trust Host CoS check box	Check this box if you want the vNIC to use the class of service provided by the host operating system.
PCI Order field	The order in which this vNIC will be used. To specify an order, enter an integer within the displayed range.
Default VLAN field	If there is no default VLAN for this vNIC, click **NONE**. Otherwise, click the second radio button and enter a VLAN ID between 1 and 4094 in the field. **Note** This option cannot be used in VNTAG mode.
VLAN Mode drop-down list	If you want to use VLAN trunking, select **TRUNK**. Otherwise, select **ACCESS**. **Note** This option cannot be used in VNTAG mode.
Rate Limit field	If you want this vNIC to have an unlimited data rate, select OFF. Otherwise, click the second radio button and enter a rate limit in the associated field. Enter an integer between 1 and 10,000 Mbps. For VIC 13xx controllers, you can enter an integer between 1 and 40,000 Mbps. For VIC 1455 and 1457 controllers: • If the adapter is connected to 25 Gbps link on a Switch, then you can enter an integer between 1 to 25,000 Mbps for the **Rate Limit** field. • If the adapter is connected to 10 Gbps link on a Switch, then you can enter an integer between 1 to 10,000 Mbps for the **Rate Limit** field. For VIC 1495 and 1497 controllers: • If the adapter is connected to 40 Gbps link on a switch, then you can enter an integer between 1 to 40,000 Mbps for the **Rate Limit** field. • If the adapter is connected to 100 Gbps link on a switch, then you can enter an integer between 1 to 100,000 Mbps for the **Rate Limit** field. **Note** This option cannot be used in VNTAG mode.

Name	Description
Enable PXE Boot check box	Check this box if the vNIC can be used to perform a PXE boot.
Channel Number field	Select the channel number that will be assigned to this vNIC. **Note** VNTAG mode is required for this option.
PCI Link field	The link through which vNICs can be connected. These are the following values: • **0** - The first cross-edged link where the vNIC is placed. • **1** - The second cross-edged link where the vNIC is placed. **Note** • This option is available only on some Cisco UCS C-Series servers.
Port Profile drop-down list	Select the port profile that should be associated with the vNIC. This field displays the port profiles defined on the switch to which this server is connected. **Note** VNTAG mode is required for this option.
Enable Uplink Failover check box	Check this box if traffic on this vNIC should fail over to the secondary interface if there are communication problems. **Note** VNTAG mode is required for this option.
Enable VMQ check box	Check this box to enable Virtual Machine Queue (VMQ). **Note** Ensure that VMQ is not enabled when SR-IOV or netflow option is enabled on the adapter. This option is available only on some Cisco UCS C-Series servers.
Enable aRFS check box	Check this box to enable Accelerated Receive Flow steering (aRFS). This option is available only on some Cisco UCS C-Series servers.
Enable NVGRE check box	Check this box to enable Network Virtualization using Generic Routing Encapsulation. • This option is available only on some Cisco UCS C-Series servers. • This option is available only on C-Series servers with Cisco VIC 1385 cards.
Enable VXLAN check box	Check this box to enable Virtual Extensible LAN. • This option is available only on some Cisco UCS C-Series servers. • This option is available only on C-Series servers with Cisco VIC 1385 and VIC 14xx cards.

Name	Description
Advanced Filter check box	Check this box to enable advanced filter options in vNICs.
Failback Timeout field	After a vNIC has started using its secondary interface, this setting controls how long the primary interface must be available before the system resumes using the primary interface for the vNIC. Enter a number of seconds between 0 and 600. **Note** VNTAG mode is required for this option.

Step 5 In the **Ethernet Interrupt** area, update the following fields:

Name	Description
Interrupt Count field	The number of interrupt resources to allocate. In general, this value should be equal to the number of completion queue resources. Enter an integer between 1 and 514.
Coalescing Time field	The time to wait between interrupts or the idle period that must be encountered before an interrupt is sent. Enter an integer between 1 and 65535. To turn off interrupt coalescing, enter 0 (zero) in this field.
Coalescing Type drop-down list	This can be one of the following: • **MIN**—The system waits for the time specified in the **Coalescing Time** field before sending another interrupt event. • **IDLE**—The system does not send an interrupt until there is a period of no activity lasting as least as long as the time specified in the **Coalescing Time** field.
Interrupt Mode drop-down list	The preferred driver interrupt mode. This can be one of the following: • **MSI-X**—Message Signaled Interrupts (MSI) with the optional extension. This is the recommended option. • **MSI**—MSI only. • **INTx**—PCI INTx interrupts.

Step 6 In the **Ethernet Receive Queue** area, update the following fields:

Name	Description
Receive Queue Count field	The number of receive queue resources to allocate. Enter an integer between 1 and 256.
Receive Queue Ring Size field	The number of descriptors in each receive queue. Enter an integer between 64 and 4096.

Step 7 In the **Ethernet Transmit Queue** area, update the following fields:

Name	Description
Transmit Queue Count field	The number of transmit queue resources to allocate. Enter an integer between 1 and 256.
Transmit Queue Ring Size field	The number of descriptors in each transmit queue. Enter an integer between 64 and 4096.

Step 8 In the **Completion Queue** area, update the following fields:

Name	Description
Completion Queue Count field	The number of completion queue resources to allocate. In general, the number of completion queue resources you should allocate is equal to the number of transmit queue resources plus the number of receive queue resources. Enter an integer between 1 and 512.
Completion Queue Ring Size field	The number of descriptors in each completion queue. This value cannot be changed.

Step 9 In the **RoCE Properties** area, update the following fields:

Name	Description
RoCE check box	Check the check box to change the RoCE Properties.
Queue Pairs (1 - 2048) field	The number of queue pairs per adapter. Enter an integer between 1 and 2048. We recommend that this number be an integer power of 2.
Memory Regions (1 - 524288) field	The number of memory regions per adapter. Enter an integer between 1 and 524288. We recommend that this number be an integer power of 2.
Resource Groups (1 - 128) field	The number of resource groups per adapter. Enter an integer between 1 and 128. We recommend that this number be an integer power of 2 greater than or equal to the number of CPU cores on the system for optimum performance.

Step 10 In the **TCP Offload** area, update the following fields:

Name	Description
Enable TCP Segmentation Offload check box	If checked, the CPU sends large TCP packets to the hardware to be segmented. This option may reduce CPU overhead and increase throughput rate. If cleared, the CPU segments large packets. **Note** This option is also known as Large Send Offload (LSO).

Name	Description
Enable TCP Rx Offload Checksum Validation check box	If checked, the CPU sends all packet checksums to the hardware for validation. This option may reduce CPU overhead. If cleared, the CPU validates all packet checksums.
Enable TCP Tx Offload Checksum Generation check box	If checked, the CPU sends all packets to the hardware so that the checksum can be calculated. This option may reduce CPU overhead. If cleared, the CPU calculates all packet checksums.
Enable Large Receive check box	If checked, the hardware reassembles all segmented packets before sending them to the CPU. This option may reduce CPU utilization and increase inbound throughput. If cleared, the CPU processes all large packets.

Step 11 In the **Receive Side Scaling** area, update the following fields:

Step 12 Click **Save Changes**.

Creating a vNIC

The Cisco UCS Virtual Interface Cards provide two vHBAs and two vNICs by default. You can create up to 14 additional vHBAs or vNICs on these adapter cards.

The Cisco UCS 1455 and 1457 Virtual Interface Cards, in non-port channel mode, provide four vHBAs and four vNICs by default. You can create up to 10 additional vHBAs or vNICs on these adapter cards.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Networking** menu.

Step 2 In the **Adapter Card** pane, click the **vNICs** tab.

Step 3 In the **Host Ethernet Interfaces** area, choose one of these actions:

- To create a vNIC using default configuration settings, click **Add vNIC**.
- To create a vNIC using the same configuration settings as an existing vNIC, select that vNIC and click **Clone vNIC**.

The **Add vNIC** dialog box appears.

Step 4 In the **Add vNIC** dialog box, enter a name for the vNIC in the **Name** entry box.

Step 5 (Optional) In the **Add vNIC** dialog box, enter a channel number for the vNIC in the **Channel Number** entry box.

Note If NIV is enabled on the adapter, you must assign a channel number for the vNIC when you create it.

Step 6 Click **Add vNIC**.

What to do next

If configuration changes are required, configure the new vNIC as described in Modifying vNIC Properties, on page 177.

Deleting a vNIC

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Networking** menu.

Step 2 In the **Adapter Card** pane, click the **vNICs** tab.

Step 3 In the **Host Ethernet Interfaces** area, select a vNIC from the table.

Note You cannot delete either of the two default vNICs, **eth0** or **eth1**.

Step 4 Click **Delete vNIC** and click **OK** to confirm.

Managing Cisco usNIC

Overview of Cisco usNIC

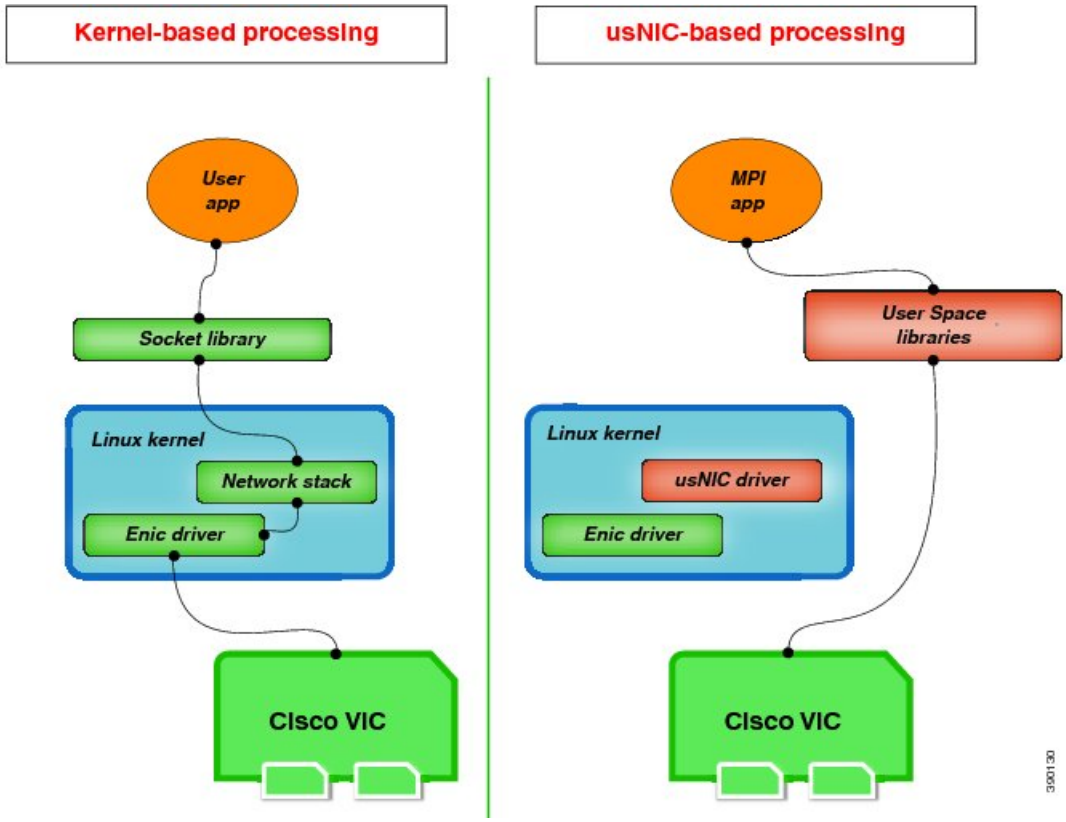
The Cisco user-space NIC (Cisco usNIC) feature improves the performance of software applications that run on the Cisco UCS servers in your data center by bypassing the kernel when sending and receiving networking packets. The applications interact directly with a Cisco UCS VIC second generation or later generation adapter, such as the , which improves the networking performance of your high-performance computing cluster. To benefit from Cisco usNIC, your applications must use the Message Passing Interface (MPI) instead of sockets or other communication APIs.

Cisco usNIC offers the following benefits for your MPI applications:

- Provides a low-latency and high-throughput communication transport.
- Employs the standard and application-independent Ethernet protocol.
- Takes advantage of lowlatency forwarding, Unified Fabric, and integrated management support in the following Cisco data center platforms:
  - Cisco UCS server
  - Cisco UCS VIC second generation or later generation adapter
  - 10 or 40GbE networks

Standard Ethernet applications use user-space socket libraries, which invoke the networking stack in the Linux kernel. The networking stack then uses the Cisco eNIC driver to communicate with the Cisco VIC hardware. The following figure shows the contrast between a regular software application and an MPI application that uses Cisco usNIC.

Figure 1: Kernel-Based Network Communication versus Cisco usNIC-Based Communication



Viewing and Configuring Cisco usNIC using the Cisco IMC GUI

Before you begin

You must log in to the Cisco IMC GUI with administrator privileges to perform this task. Click Play on this video to watch how to configure Cisco usNIC in CIMC.

Procedure

Step 1 Log into the Cisco IMC GUI.

For more information about how to log into Cisco IMC, see Cisco UCS C-Series Servers Integrated Management Controller GUI Configuration Guide.

Step 2 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Networking** menu.

Step 3 In the **Adapter Card** pane, click the **vNICs** tab.

Step 4 In the **vNICs** pane, click **eth0** or **eth1**.

Step 5 In the **Ethernet Interfaces** area, select the **usNIC** area.

Note usNIC support is not available for C125 servers.

Step 6 In the **Properties** area, review and update the following fields:

Name	Description
Name	The name for the vNIC that is the parent of the usNIC. **Note** This field is read-only.
usNIC field	The number of usNICs assigned to the specific vNIC. Enter an integer between 0 and 225. To assign additional usNICs to a specified vNIC, enter value higher than the existing value. To delete usNICs from a specified vNIC, enter value smaller than the existing value. To delete all the usNICs assigned to a vNIC, enter zero.
Transmit Queue Count field	The number of transmit queue resources to allocate. Enter an integer between 1 and 256.
Receive Queue Count field	The number of receive queue resources to allocate. Enter an integer between 1 and 256.
Completion Queue Count field	The number of completion queue resources to allocate. In general, the number of completion queue resources you should allocate is equal to the number of transmit queue resources plus the number of receive queue resources. Enter an integer between 1 and 512.
Transmit Queue Ring Size field	The number of descriptors in each transmit queue. Enter an integer between 64 and 4096.
Receive Queue Ring Size field	The number of descriptors in each receive queue. Enter an integer between 64 and 4096.
Interrupt Count field	The number of interrupt resources to allocate. In general, this value should be equal to the number of completion queue resources. Enter an integer between 1 and 514.
Interrupt Coalescing Type drop-down list	This can be one of the following: • **MIN**—The system waits for the time specified in the **Coalescing Time** field before sending another interrupt event. • **IDLE**—The system does not send an interrupt until there is a period of no activity lasting as least as long as the time specified in the **Coalescing Time** field.

Name	Description
Interrupt Coalescing Timer Time field	The time to wait between interrupts or the idle period that must be encountered before an interrupt is sent. Enter an integer between 1 and 65535. To turn off interrupt coalescing, enter 0 (zero) in this field.
Class of Service field	The class of service to associate with traffic from this usNIC. Select an integer between 0 and 6, with 0 being lowest priority and 6 being the highest priority. **Note** This option cannot be used in VNTAG mode.
TCP Segment Offload check box	If checked, the CPU sends large TCP packets to the hardware to be segmented. This option may reduce CPU overhead and increase throughput rate. If cleared, the CPU segments large packets. **Note** This option is also known as Large Send Offload (LSO).
Large Receive check box	If checked, the hardware reassembles all segmented packets before sending them to the CPU. This option may reduce CPU utilization and increase inbound throughput. If cleared, the CPU processes all large packets.
TCP Tx Checksum check box	If checked, the CPU sends all packets to the hardware so that the checksum can be calculated. This option may reduce CPU overhead. If cleared, the CPU calculates all packet checksums.
TCP Rx Checksum check box	If checked, the CPU sends all packet checksums to the hardware for validation. This option may reduce CPU overhead. If cleared, the CPU validates all packet checksums.

Step 7 Click **Save Changes**.

The changes take effect upon the next server reboot.

Viewing usNIC Properties

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Networking** menu.

Step 2 In the **Adapter Card** pane, click the **vNICs** tab.

Step 3 In the **vNICs** pane, click **eth0** or **eth1**.

Step 4 In the **Host Ethernet Interfaces** pane's **usNIC Properties** area, review the information in the following fields:

Note usNIC support is not available for C125 servers.

Name	Description
Name	The name for the vNIC that is the parent of the usNIC. **Note** This field is read-only.
usNIC field	The number of usNICs assigned to the specific vNIC. Enter an integer between 0 and 225. To assign additional usNICs to a specified vNIC, enter value higher than the existing value. To delete usNICs from a specified vNIC, enter value smaller than the existing value. To delete all the usNICs assigned to a vNIC, enter zero.
Transmit Queue Count field	The number of transmit queue resources to allocate. Enter an integer between 1 and 256.
Receive Queue Count field	The number of receive queue resources to allocate. Enter an integer between 1 and 256.
Completion Queue Count field	The number of completion queue resources to allocate. In general, the number of completion queue resources you should allocate is equal to the number of transmit queue resources plus the number of receive queue resources. Enter an integer between 1 and 512.
Transmit Queue Ring Size field	The number of descriptors in each transmit queue. Enter an integer between 64 and 4096.
Receive Queue Ring Size field	The number of descriptors in each receive queue. Enter an integer between 64 and 4096.

Name	Description
Interrupt Count field	The number of interrupt resources to allocate. In general, this value should be equal to the number of completion queue resources. Enter an integer between 1 and 514.
Interrupt Coalescing Type drop-down list	This can be one of the following: • **MIN**—The system waits for the time specified in the **Coalescing Time** field before sending another interrupt event. • **IDLE**—The system does not send an interrupt until there is a period of no activity lasting as least as long as the time specified in the **Coalescing Time** field.
Interrupt Coalescing Timer Time field	The time to wait between interrupts or the idle period that must be encountered before an interrupt is sent. Enter an integer between 1 and 65535. To turn off interrupt coalescing, enter 0 (zero) in this field.
Class of Service field	The class of service to associate with traffic from this usNIC. Select an integer between 0 and 6, with 0 being lowest priority and 6 being the highest priority. **Note** This option cannot be used in VNTAG mode.
TCP Segment Offload check box	If checked, the CPU sends large TCP packets to the hardware to be segmented. This option may reduce CPU overhead and increase throughput rate. If cleared, the CPU segments large packets. **Note** This option is also known as Large Send Offload (LSO).
Large Receive check box	If checked, the hardware reassembles all segmented packets before sending them to the CPU. This option may reduce CPU utilization and increase inbound throughput. If cleared, the CPU processes all large packets.
TCP Tx Checksum check box	If checked, the CPU sends all packets to the hardware so that the checksum can be calculated. This option may reduce CPU overhead. If cleared, the CPU calculates all packet checksums.

Name	Description
TCP Rx Checksum check box	If checked, the CPU sends all packet checksums to the hardware for validation. This option may reduce CPU overhead. If cleared, the CPU validates all packet checksums.

Configuring iSCSI Boot Capability

Configuring iSCSI Boot Capability for vNICs

When the rack-servers are configured in a standalone mode, and when the VIC adapters are directly attached to the Nexus 5000 and Nexus 6000 family of switches, you can configure these VIC adapters to boot the servers remotely from iSCSI storage targets. You can configure Ethernet vNICs to enable a rack server to load the host OS image from remote iSCSI target devices.

To configure the iSCSI boot capability on a vNIC:

- You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.
- To configure a vNIC to boot a server remotely from an iSCSI storage target, you must enable the PXE boot option on the vNIC.

Note You can configure a maximum of 2 iSCSI vNICs for each host.

Configuring iSCSI Boot Capability on a vNIC

You can configure a maximum of 2 iSCSI vNICs for each host.

Before you begin

- To configure a vNIC to boot a server remotely from an iSCSI storage target, you must enable the PXE boot option on the vNIC.
- You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Networking** menu.

Step 2 In the **Adapter Card** pane, click the **vNICs** tab.

Step 3 In the **vNICs** pane, click **eth0** or **eth1**.

Step 4 In the **Ethernet Interfaces** area, select the **iSCSI Boot Properties** area.

Step 5 In the **General Area**, update the following fields:

Name	Description
Name field	The name of the vNIC.
DHCP Network check box	Whether DHCP Network is enabled for the vNIC. If enabled, the initiator network configuration is obtained from the DHCP server.
DHCP iSCSI check box	Whether DHCP iSCSI is enabled for the vNIC. If enabled and the DHCP ID is set, the initiator IQN and target information are obtained from the DHCP server. **Note** If DHCP iSCSI is enabled without a DHCP ID, only the target information is obtained.
DHCP ID field	The vendor identifier string used by the adapter to obtain the initiator IQN and target information from the DHCP server. Enter a string up to 64 characters.
DHCP Timeout field	The number of seconds to wait before the initiator assumes that the DHCP server is unavailable. Enter an integer between 60 and 300 (default: 60 seconds)
Link Timeout field	The number of seconds to wait before the initiator assumes that the link is unavailable. Enter an integer between 0 and 255 (default: 15 seconds)
LUN Busy Retry Count field	The number of times to retry the connection in case of a failure during iSCSI LUN discovery. Enter an integer between 0 and 255. The default is 15.
IP Version field	The IP version to use during iSCSI boot.

Step 6 In the **Initiator Area**, update the following fields:

Name	Description
Name field	A regular expression that defines the name of the iSCSI initiator. You can enter any alphanumeric string as well as the following special characters: • . (period) • : (colon) • - (dash) **Note** The name is in the IQN format.
IP Address field	The IP address of the iSCSI initiator.

Name	Description
Subnet Mask field	The subnet mask for the iSCSI initiator.
Gateway field	The default gateway.
Primary DNS field	The primary DNS server address.
Secondary DNS field	The secondary DNS server address.
TCP Timeout field	The number of seconds to wait before the initiator assumes that TCP is unavailable. Enter an integer between 0 and 255 (default: 15 seconds)
CHAP Name field	The Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP) name of the initiator.
CHAP Secret field	The Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP) shared secret of the initiator.

Step 7 In the **Primary Target Area**, update the following fields:

Name	Description
Name field	The name of the primary target in the IQN format.
IP Address field	The IP address of the target.
TCP Port field	The TCP port associated with the target.
Boot LUN field	The Boot LUN associated with the target.
CHAP Name field	The Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP) name of the initiator.
CHAP Secret field	The Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP) shared secret of the initiator.

Step 8 In the **Secondary Target Area**, update the following fields:

Name	Description
Name field	The name of the secondary target in the IQN format.
IP Address field	The IP address of the target.
TCP Port field	The TCP port associated with the target.
Boot LUN field	The Boot LUN associated with the target.
CHAP Name field	The Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP) name of the initiator.
CHAP Secret field	The Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP) shared secret of the initiator.

Name	Description
Configure ISCSI button	Configures iSCSI boot on the selected vNIC.
Unconfigure ISCSI button	Removes the configuration from the selected vNIC.
Reset Values button	Restores the values for the vNIC to the settings that were in effect when this dialog box was first opened.
Cancel button	Closes the dialog box without making any changes.

Step 9 Click **Save Changes**.

Removing iSCSI Boot Configuration from a vNIC

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Networking** menu.
Step 2 In the **Adapter Card** pane, click the **vNICs** tab.
Step 3 In the **vNICs** pane, click **eth0** or **eth1**.
Step 4 In the **Ethernet Interfaces** area, select the **iSCSI Boot Properties** area.
Step 5 Click the **Unconfigure ISCSI** button at the bottom of the area.

Backing Up and Restoring the Adapter Configuration

Exporting the Adapter Configuration

The adapter configuration can be exported as an XML file to a remote server which can be one of the following:

- TFTP
- FTP
- SFTP
- SCP
- HTTP

Before you begin

Obtain the remote server IP address.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Networking** menu.

Step 2 Click the **Adapter Card** tab.

The **General** tab appears.

Step 3 In the **Actions** area of the **General** tab, click **Export Configuration**.

The **Export Adapter Configuration** dialog box opens.

Step 4 In the **Export Adapter Configuration** dialog box, update the following fields:

Name	Description
Export to drop-down list	The remote server type. This can be one of the following: • **TFTP Server** • **FTP Server** • **SFTP Server** • **SCP Server** • **HTTP Server** **Note** If you chose SCP or SFTP as the remote server type while performing this action, a pop-up window is displayed with the message *Server (RSA) key fingerprint is <server_finger_print _ID> Do you wish to continue?*. Click Yes or No depending on the authenticity of the server fingerprint. The fingerprint is based on the host's public key and helps you to identify or verify the host you are connecting to.
Server IP/Hostname field	The IPv4 or IPv6 address, or hostname of the server to which the adapter configuration file will be exported. Depending on the setting in the **Export to** drop-down list, the name of the field may vary.
Path and Filename field	The path and filename Cisco IMC should use when exporting the file to the remote server.
Username	The username the system should use to log in to the remote server. This field does not apply if the protocol is TFTP or HTTP.
Password	The password for the remote server username. This field does not apply if the protocol is TFTP or HTTP.

Step 5 Click **Export Configuration**.

Note After exporting, you must reset the vNIC MAC address by selecting the **AUTO** radio button from the vNIC configuration screen on the Cisco IMC web UI to generate a new MAC address.

Importing the Adapter Configuration

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Networking** menu.

Step 2 Click the **Adapter Card** tab.

The **General** tab appears.

Step 3 In the **Actions** area of the **General** tab, click **Import Configuration**.

The **Import Adapter Configuration** dialog box opens.

Step 4 In the **Import Adapter Configuration** dialog box, update the following fields:

Name	Description
Import from drop-down list	The remote server type. This can be one of the following: • **TFTP Server** • **FTP Server** • **SFTP Server** • **SCP Server** • **HTTP Server** **Note** If you chose SCP or SFTP as the remote server type while performing this action, a pop-up window is displayed with the message *Server (RSA) key fingerprint is <server_finger_print _ID> Do you wish to continue?*. Click Yes or No depending on the authenticity of the server fingerprint. The fingerprint is based on the host's public key and helps you to identify or verify the host you are connecting to.
Server IP/Hostname field	The IPv4 or IPv6 address, or hostname of the server on which the adapter configuration file resides. Depending on the setting in the **Import from** drop-down list, the name of the field may vary.
Path and Filename field	The path and filename of the configuration file on the remote server.
Username	The username the system should use to log in to the remote server. This field does not apply if the protocol is TFTP or HTTP.
Password	The password for the remote server username. This field does not apply if the protocol is TFTP or HTTP.

Step 5 Click **Import Configuration**.

The adapter downloads the configuration file from the specified path on the TFTP server at the specified IP address. The configuration will be installed during the next server reboot.

What to do next

Reboot the server to apply the imported configuration.

Restoring Adapter Defaults

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Networking** menu.

Step 2 Click the **Adapter Card** tab.

The **General** tab appears.

Step 3 In the **Actions** area of the **General** tab, click **Reset To Defaults** and click **OK** to confirm.

Note Resetting the adapter to default settings sets the port speed to 4 X 10 Gbps. Choose 40 Gbps as the port speed only if you are using a 40 Gbps switch.

Resetting the Adapter

Procedure

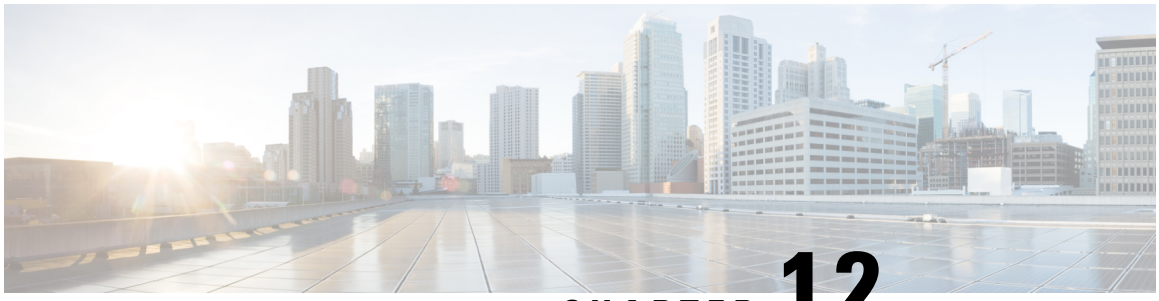
Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Networking** menu.

Step 2 Click the **Adapter Card** tab.

The **General** tab appears.

Step 3 In the **Actions** area of the **General** tab, click **Reset** and click **Yes** to confirm.

Note Resetting the adapter also resets the host and requires a reformat.



CHAPTER 12

Managing Storage Adapters

This chapter includes the following sections:

Managing Storage Adapters

Self Encrypting Drives (Full Disk Encryption)

Cisco IMC supports self encrypting drives (SED). A special hardware in the drives encrypts incoming data and decrypts outgoing data in real-time. This feature is also called Full Disk Encryption (FDE).

The data on the drive is encrypted on its way into the drive and decrypted on its way out. However, if you lock the drive, no security key is required to retrieve the data.

When a drive is locked, an encryption key is created and stored internally. All data stored on this drive is encrypted using that key, and stored in encrypted form. Once you store the data in this manner, a security key is required in order to un-encrypt and fetch the data from the drive. Unlocking a drive deletes that encryption key and renders the stored data unusable. This is called a Secure Erase. The FDE comprises a key ID and a security key.

The FDE feature supports the following operations:

- Enable and disable security on a controller
- Create a secure virtual drive
- Secure a non-secure drive group
- Unlock foreign configuration drives
- Enable security on a physical drive (JBOD)
- Clear secure SED drives
- Clear secure foreign configuration

Scenarios to consider While Configuring Controller Security in a Dual or Multiple Controllers Environment

Note Dual or Multiple controllers connectivity is available only on some servers.

Controller security can be enabled, disabled, or modified independently. However, local and remote key management applies to all the controllers on the server. Therefore security action involving switching the key management modes must be performed with caution. In a scenario where both controllers are secure, and you decide to move one of the controllers to a different mode, you need to perform the same operation on the other controller as well.

Consider the following two scenarios:

- Scenario 1—Key management is set to remote; both controllers are secure and use remote key management. If you now wish to switch to local key management, switch the key management for each controller and disable remote key management.
- Scenario 2—Key management is set to local; both controllers are secure and use local key management. If you now wish to switch to remote key management, enable remote key management and switch the key management for each controller.

If you do not modify the controller security method on any one of the controllers, it renders the secure key management in an unsupported configuration state.

Enabling Controller Security

This option is available only on some C-series servers.

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.

Step 2 In the **Storage** menu, click the appropriate LSI MegaRAID or HBA controller.

Step 3 In the **Controller Info** area, click **Enable Drive Security**.

Step 4 In the **Enable Drive Security** dialog box, update the following fields:

Name	Description
Controller Security field	Indicates that the controller is disabled.

Name	Description
Key Management field	Indicates whether the key is remotely managed or locally managed. This can be one of the following: • **Remote Key Management** radio button— Controller security key is configured or managed using the remote KMIP server. **Note** If you choose this option, you do not have to specify the existing security key but you have to provide the key ID and the security key for local management. • **Local Key Management** radio button— Controller security is configured locally.
Security Key Identifier field	The current key ID.
Security Key field	Security key used to enable controller security. If you wish to change the current security key, enter the new key here. **Note** Once you change the security key, a **Secure Key Verification** pop-up window appears where you need to enter the current security key to verify it.
Confirm Security Key field	Re-enter the security key.
Suggest button	Suggests the security key or key ID that can be assigned.

Step 5 Click **Save**.

This enables controller security.

Modifying Controller Security

This option is available only on some C-series servers.

Before you begin

- You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.
- You must have first enabled controller security to modify it.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.

Step 2 In the **Storage** menu, click the appropriate LSI MegaRAID or HBA controller.

Step 3 In the **Controller Info** area, click **Modify Drive Security**.

Step 4 In the **Modify Drive Security** dialog box, update the following fields:

Name	Description
Controller Security field	Indicates whether or not controller security is enabled. This can be one of the following: • **Enabled**— Controller security is enabled. • **Disabled**— Controller security is disabled.
Security Key Identifier field	The current key ID.
Security Key field	Security key used to enable controller security. If you wish to change the current security key, enter the new key here. **Note** Once you change the security key, a **Secure Key Verification** pop-up window appears where you need to enter the current security key to verify it.
Confirm Security Key field	Re-enter the security key.
Modify Security Key check box	**Note** This option appears only for remote key management. If you select this option the security key on the KMIP server is modified.
Suggest button	Suggests the security key or key ID that can be assigned.
Save button	Saves the data.
Cancel button	Cancels the action.

Step 5 Click **Save**.

This modifies the controller security settings.

Disabling Controller Security

This option is available only on some C-series servers.

Before you begin

- You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.
- You must have first enabled controller security to disable it.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.

Step 2 In the **Storage** menu, click the appropriate LSI MegaRAID or HBA controller.

Step 3 In the **Controller Info** area, click **Disable Drive Security**.

Step 4 Click **OK** in the confirmation pop-up window.

This disables controller security.

Switching Controller Security Between Local and Remote Key Management

This task allows you to switch controller security from local management to remote management, and from remote to local management.

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.

Step 2 In the **Storage** menu, click the appropriate LSI MegaRAID or HBA controller.

Step 3 In the **Controller Info** area, to switch the controller security from remote to local management, click **Switch to Local Key Management**.

Note When you switch from remote to local key management, ensure that you disable KMIP secure key management first.

Step 4 (Optional) Similarly, if you want to switch the controller security from local to remote management, click **Switch to Remote Key Management**.

Step 5 Click **OK** to confirm.

Creating Virtual Drive from Unused Physical Drives

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.

Step 2 In the **Storage** menu, click the appropriate LSI MegaRAID or HBA controller.

Step 3 In the **Actions** area, click **Create Virtual Drive from Unused Physical Drives**.

The **Create Virtual Drive from Unused Physical Drives** dialog box displays.

Step 4 In the **Create Virtual Drive from Unused Physical Drives** dialog box, select the RAID level for the new virtual drives:

This can be one of the following:

- **Raid 0**—Simple striping.

- **Raid 1**—Simple mirroring.
- **Raid 5**—Striping with parity.
- **Raid 6**—Striping with two parity drives.
- **Raid 10**—Spanned mirroring.
- **Raid 50**—Spanned striping with parity.
- **Raid 60**—Spanned striping with two parity drives.

Step 5 In the **Create Drive Groups** area, choose one or more physical drives to include in the group.

Use the >> button to add the drives to the **Drive Groups** table. Use the << button to remove physical drives from the drive group.

Note
- The size of the smallest physical drive in the drive group defines the maximum size used for all the physical drives. To ensure maximum use of space for all physical drives, it is recommended that the size of all the drives in the drive group are similar.
- Cisco IMC manages only RAID controllers and not HBAs attached to the server.
- You must have multiple drive groups available to create virtual drives for certain RAID levels. While creating drives for these RAID levels, the create drive option is available only if the required number of drives are selected.

Step 6 In the **Virtual Drive Properties** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
Virtual Drive Name field	The name of the new virtual drive you want to create.
Read Policy drop-down list	The read-ahead cache mode.
Cache Policy drop-down list	The cache policy used for buffering reads.
Strip Size drop-down list	The size of each strip, in KB.
Write Policy drop-down list	This can be one of the following • **Write Through**— Data is written through the cache and to the physical drives. Performance is improved, because subsequent reads of that data can be satisfied from the cache. • **Write Back**— Data is stored in the cache, and is only written to the physical drives when space in the cache is needed. Virtual drives requesting this policy fall back to **Write Through** caching when the BBU cannot guarantee the safety of the cache in the event of a power failure. • **Write Back Bad BBU**—With this policy, write caching remains **Write Back** even if the battery backup unit is defective or discharged.

Name	Description
Disk Cache Policy drop-down list	This can be one of the following • **Unchanged**— The disk cache policy is unchanged. • **Enabled**— Allows IO caching on the disk. • **Disabled**— Disallows disk caching.
Access Policy drop-down list	This can be one of the following • **Read Write**— Enables host to perform read-write on the VD. • **Read Only**— Host can only read from the VD. • **Blocked**— Host can neither read nor write to the VD.
Size field	The size of the virtual drive you want to create. Enter a value and select one of the following units: • MB • GB • TB

Step 7 Click the **Generate XML API Request** button to generate an API request.

Step 8 Click **Close**.

Step 9 Click **Create Virtual Drive**.

Creating Virtual Drive from an Existing Drive Group

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.

Step 2 In the **Storage** menu, click the appropriate LSI MegaRAID or HBA controller.

Step 3 In the **Actions** area, click **Create Virtual Drive from an Existing Virtual Drive Group**.

The **Create Virtual Drive from an Existing Virtual Drive Group** dialog box displays.

Step 4 In the **Create Virtual Drive from an Existing Virtual Drive Group** dialog box, select the virtual drive whose drive group you want to use to create a new virtual drive.

Step 5 In the **Virtual Drive Properties** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
Virtual Drive Name field	The name of the new virtual drive you want to create.
Read Policy drop-down list	The read-ahead cache mode.
Cache Policy drop-down list	The cache policy used for buffering reads.
Strip Size drop-down list	The size of each strip, in KB.
Write Policy drop-down list	This can be one of the following • **Write Through**— Data is written through the cache and to the physical drives. Performance is improved, because subsequent reads of that data can be satisfied from the cache. • **Write Back**— Data is stored in the cache, and is only written to the physical drives when space in the cache is needed. Virtual drives requesting this policy fall back to **Write Through** caching when the BBU cannot guarantee the safety of the cache in the event of a power failure. • **Write Back Bad BBU**—With this policy, write caching remains **Write Back** even if the battery backup unit is defective or discharged.
Disk Cache Policy drop-down list	This can be one of the following • **Unchanged**— The disk cache policy is unchanged. • **Enabled**— Allows IO caching on the disk. • **Disabled**— Disallows disk caching.
Access Policy drop-down list	This can be one of the following • **Read Write**— Enables host to perform read-write on the VD. • **Read Only**— Host can only read from the VD. • **Blocked**— Host can neither read nor write to the VD.
Size field	The size of the virtual drive you want to create. Enter a value and select one of the following units: • MB • GB • TB

Step 6 Click the **Generate XML API Request** button to generate an API request.

Step 7 Click **Close**.

Step 8 Click **Create Virtual Drive**.

Setting a Virtual Drive to Transport Ready State

You can move a virtual drive from one MegaRAID controller to another using the **Set Transport Ready** feature. This allows all the pending IOs of the virtual drive to complete their activities, hide the virtual drive from the operating system, flush cache, pause all the background operations, and save the current progress in disk data format, allowing you to move the drive. When you move a virtual drive, all other drives belonging to the same drive group inherit the same change as the moved drive.

When the last configured physical drive on the group is removed from the current controller, the drive group becomes foreign and all foreign configuration rules apply to the group. However, the Transport Ready feature does not change any foreign configuration behavior.

You can also clear a virtual drive from the Transport Ready state. This makes the virtual drive available to the operating systems.

Following restrictions apply to a transport ready virtual drive:

- Only a maximum of 16 transport ready drive groups are currently supported.
- This feature is not supported on high availability.
- A virtual drive cannot be set as transport ready under these conditions:
  - When a virtual drive of a drive group is being reconstructed
  - When a virtual drive of a drive group contains a pinned cache
  - When a virtual drive of a drive group is marked as cacheable or associated with a cachecade virtual drive
  - If a virtual drive is a cachecade virtual drive
  - If a virtual drive is offline
  - If a virtual drive is a bootable virtual drive

Setting a Virtual Drive as Transport Ready

Before you begin

- You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.
- The virtual drive must be in optimal state to enable transport ready.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.

Step 2 On the **Storage** menu, click the appropriate LSI MegaRAID or HBA Controller.

Step 3 On the **Work** pane, click the **Virtual Drive Info** tab.

Step 4 In the **Virtual Drives** area, choose the drive that you want set as transport ready.

Step 5 In the **Actions** area, click **Set Transport Ready**.

The **Set Transport Ready** dialog box displays.

Step 6 Update the following properties in the dialog box:

Name	Description
Initialize Type drop-down list	Allows you to select the initialization type using which you can set the selected virtual drive as transport ready. This can be one of the following: • **Exlude All**— Excludes all the dedicated hot spare drives. • **Include All**— Includes any exclusively available or shared dedicated hot spare drives. • **Include Dedicated Hot Spare Drive**— Includes exclusive dedicated hot spare drives.
Set Transport Ready button	Sets the selected virtual drive as transport ready.
Cancel button	Cancels the action.

Note When you set a virtual drive to transport ready all the physical drives associated with it are displayed as **Ready to Remove**.

Clearing a Virtual Drive from Transport Ready State

Before you begin

- You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.
- The virtual drive must be transport ready.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.

Step 2 On the **Storage** menu, click the appropriate LSI MegaRAID or HBA controller.

Step 3 On the **Work** pane, click the **Virtual Drive Info** tab.

Step 4 In the **Virtual Drives** area, choose the drive to set as transport ready.

Step 5 In the **Actions** area, click **Clear Transport Ready**.

This reverts the selected transport ready virtual drive to its original optimal state.

Importing Foreign Configuration

When one or more physical drives that have previously been configured with a different controller are inserted into a server, they are identified as foreign configurations. You can import these foreign configurations to a controller.

Important You cannot import a foreign configuration in the following two scenarios:

1. When the secure virtual drive was created on server 1 (from which you want to import the configuration) using the remote key, and on server 2 (to which you want to import) using the local key.
2. When server 2 is configured with another KMIP server, which is not a part of the server 1 KMIP server cluster.

In order to import the foreign configuration in these scenarios, change the controller security on server 2 from local key management to remote key management, and use the same KMIP server from the same cluster where the server 1 KMIP is configured.

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.

Step 2 In the **RAID controller** area, the **Controller Info** tab displays by default.

Step 3 In the **Actions** area, click **Import Foreign Config**.

Note If KMIP is not enabled, a **Secure Key Verification** dialog box is displayed, prompting you to enter a security key to initiate the foreign configuration import process.

If KMIP is enabled, the **Secure Key Verification** dialog box is displayed with the following note: *"If drive security has been enabled via remote key management, specifying Security key is optional. Click on verify to start foreign configuration import."*

This allows you to click **Verify** without entering the Security Key, and initiate import.

Step 4 Click **OK** to confirm.

Clearing Foreign Configuration

Important This task clears all foreign configuration on the controller. Also, all configuration information from all physical drives hosting foreign configuration is deleted. This action cannot be reverted.

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.
Step 2 On the **Storage** menu, click the appropriate LSI MegaRAID or HBA controller.
In the **RAID Controller** area, the **Controller Info** tab displays by default.
Step 3 In the **Actions** area, click **Clear Foreign Config**.
Step 4 Click **OK** to confirm.

Clearing a Boot Drive

Important This task clears the boot drive configuration on the controller. This action cannot be reverted.

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.
Step 2 On the **Storage** menu, click the appropriate LSI MegaRAID or HBA controller.
In the **RAID Controller** area, the **Controller Info** tab displays by default.
Step 3 In the **Actions** area, click **Clear Boot Drive**.
Step 4 Click **OK** to confirm.

Enabling JBOD Mode

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.
Step 2 On the **Storage** menu, click the appropriate LSI MegaRAID or HBA controller.
Step 3 In the **RAID Controller** area, click the **Physical Drive Info** tab.
Step 4 In the **Physical Drives** area, select an unconfigured good drive.
Step 5 In the **Actions** area, click **Enable JBOD**.

Step 6 Click **Ok** to confirm.

Disabling a JBOD

Note This option is available only on some UCS C-Series servers.

Before you begin

JBOD option must be enabled for the selected controller.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.
Step 2 On the **Storage** menu, click the appropriate LSI MegaRAID or HBA controller.
Step 3 In the **RAID Controller** area, click the **Physical Drive Info** tab.
Step 4 In the **Physical Drives** area, select a JBOD drive.
Step 5 In the **Actions** area, click **Disable JBOD**.
Step 6 Click **Ok** to confirm.

Retrieving Storage Firmware Logs for a Controller

This task retrieves the storage firmware logs for the controller and places it in the `/var/log` location. This ensures that this log data is available when Technical Support Data is requested.

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.
Step 2 In the working area, the **Controller Info** tab displays by default.
Step 3 In the **Actions** area, click **Get Storage Firmware Log**.
Step 4 Click **OK** to confirm.

Important Retrieving storage firmware logs for a controller could take up to 2-4 minutes. Until this process is complete, do not initiate exporting technical support data.

Clearing Controller Configuration

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.

Step 2 In the **Storage** menu, click the appropriate LSI MegaRAID or HBA controller.

Step 3 In the **Controller Info** area, click **Clear All Configuration**.

Step 4 Click **OK** to confirm.

This clears the existing controller configuration.

Restoring Storage Controller to Factory Defaults

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.

Step 2 In the **Storage** menu, click the appropriate LSI MegaRAID or HBA controller.

Step 3 In the **Controller Info** area, click **Set Factory Defaults**.

Step 4 Click **OK** to confirm.

This restores the controller configuration to factory defaults.

Preparing a Drive for Removal

Note You can perform this task only on physical drives that display the **Unconfigured Good** status.

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.
Step 2 On the **Storage** menu, click the appropriate LSI MegaRAID or HBA controller.
Step 3 In the **RAID Controller** area, click the **Physical Drive Info** tab.
Step 4 In the **Physical Drives** area, select the drive you want to remove.
Step 5 In the **Actions** area, click **Prepare for Removal**.
Step 6 Click **OK** to confirm.

Undo Preparing a Drive for Removal

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.
Step 2 On the **Storage** menu, click the appropriate LSI MegaRAID or HBA controller.
Step 3 On the **RAID Controller** area, click the **Physical Drive Info** tab.
Step 4 In the **Physical Drives** area, select a drive with a status of **Ready to Remove**.
Step 5 In the **Actions** area, click **Undo Prepare for Removal**.
Step 6 Click **OK** to confirm.

Making a Dedicated Hot Spare

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** tab.
Step 2 On the **Storage** menu, click the appropriate LSI MegaRAID or HBA controller.
Step 3 On the **RAID Controller** area, click the **Physical Drive Info** tab.
Step 4 In the **Physical Drives** area, select an unconfigured good drive you want to make a dedicated hot spare.
Step 5 In the **Actions** area, click **Make Dedicated Hot Spare**.

The **Make Dedicated Hot Spare** dialog box displays.

Step 6 In the **Virtual Drive Details** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
Virtual Drive Number drop-down list	Select the virtual drive to which you want to dedicate the physical drive as hot spare.
Virtual Drive Name field	The name of the selected virtual drive.
Make Dedicated Hot Spare button	Creates the dedicated hot spare.
Cancel button	Closes the dialog box without saving any changes made while the dialog box was open.

Step 7 Click **Make Dedicated Hot Spare** to confirm.

Making a Global Hot Spare

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** tab.
Step 2 On the **Storage** menu, click the appropriate LSI MegaRAID or HBA controller.
Step 3 In the **RAID Controller** area, click the **Physical Drive Info** tab.
Step 4 In the **Physical Drives** area, select an unconfigured good drive you want to make a global hot spare.
Step 5 In the **Actions** area, click **Make Global Hot Spare**.

Removing a Drive from Hot Spare Pools

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.
Step 2 On the **Storage** tab, click the appropriate LSI MegaRAID controller.
Step 3 On the **Work** pane, click the **Physical Drive Info** tab.
Step 4 In the **Physical Drives** area, select the global or dedicated hot spare you want to remove from the hot spare pools.

Step 5 In the **Actions** area, click **Remove From Hot Spare Pools**.

Toggling Physical Drive Status

Before you begin

- You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.
- The controller must support the JBOD mode and the JBOD mode must be enabled.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** tab.
Step 2 On the **Storage** menu, click the appropriate LSI MegaRAID or HBA controller.
Step 3 In the **RAID Controller** area, click the **Physical Drive Info** tab.
Step 4 In the **Physical Drives** area, select the drive you want to set as unconfigured good.
Step 5 In the **Actions** area, click **Set State as Unconfigured Good**.
Step 6 Click **OK** to confirm that the JBOD mode be disabled.

The **Set State as JBOD** option is enabled.

Step 7 To enable the JBOD mode for the physical drive, click **Set State as JBOD**.
Step 8 Click **OK** to confirm.

The **Set State as Unconfigured Good** option is enabled.

Setting a Physical Drive as a Controller Boot Drive

Before you begin

- You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.
- The controller must support the JBOD mode and the JBOD mode must be enabled.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.
Step 2 On the **Storage** menu, click the appropriate LSI MegaRAID or HBA controller.
Step 3 In the **RAID Controller** area, click the **Physical Drive Info** tab.
Step 4 In the **Physical Drives** area, select the drive you want to set as boot drive for the controller.
Step 5 In the **Actions** area, click **Set as Boot Drive**.

Step 6 Click **OK** to confirm.

Initializing a Virtual Drive

All data on a virtual drive is lost when you initialize the drive. Before you run an initialization, back up any data on the virtual drive that you want to save.

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.

Step 2 On the **Storage** menu, click the appropriate LSI MegaRAID or HBA controller.

Step 3 In the **RAID Controller** area, click the **Virtual Drive Info** tab.

Step 4 In the **Virtual Drives** area, choose the drive that you want to initialize.

Step 5 In the **Actions** area, click **Initialize**.

The **Initialize Virtual Drive** dialog box displays.

Step 6 Choose the type of initialization you want to use for the virtual drive.

This can be one of the following:

- **Fast Initialize**—This option allows you to start writing data to the virtual drive immediately.
- **Full Initialize**—A complete initialization is done on the new configuration. You cannot write data to the new virtual drive until the initialization is complete.

Step 7 Click **Initialize VD** to initialize the drive, or **Cancel** to close the dialog box without making any changes.

Step 8 To view the status of the task running on the drive, in the **Operations** area, click **Refresh**.

The following details are displayed:

Name	Description
Operation	Name of the operation that is in progress on the drive.
Progress in %	Progress of the operation, in percentage complete.
Elapsed Time in secs	The number of seconds that have elapsed since the operation began.

Set as Boot Drive

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.
Step 2 On the **Storage** menu, click the appropriate LSI MegaRAID or HBA controller.
Step 3 In the **RAID Controller** area, click the **Virtual Drive Info** tab.
Step 4 In the **Virtual Drives** area, choose the drive from which the controller must boot.
Step 5 In the **Actions** area, click **Set as Boot Drive**.
Step 6 Click **OK** to confirm.

Editing a Virtual Drive

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.
Step 2 On the **Storage** menu, click the appropriate LSI MegaRAID or HBA controller.
Step 3 In the **RAID Controller** area, click the **Virtual Drive Info** tab.
Step 4 In the **Virtual Drives** area, click **Edit Virtual Drive**.
Step 5 Review the instructions, and then click **OK**.
The **Edit Virtual Drive** dialog box displays before prompting you to take a backup of your data.
Step 6 From the **Select RAID Level to migrate** drop-down list, choose a RAID level.

See the following table for RAID migration criteria:

Name	Description
Select RAID Level to migrate drop-down list	Select the RAID level to which you want to migrate. Migrations are allowed for the following RAID levels: • **RAID 0** to **RAID 1** • **RAID 0** to **RAID 5** • **RAID 0** to **RAID 6** • **RAID 1** to **RAID 0** • **RAID 1** to **RAID 5** • **RAID 1** to **RAID 6** • **RAID 5** to **RAID 0** • **RAID 6** to **RAID 0** • **RAID 6** to **RAID 5** When you are migrating from one raid level to another, the data arms of the new RAID level should be equal to or greater than the existing one. In case of RAID 6, the data arms will be number of drives minus two, as RAID 6 has double distributed parity. For example, when you create RAID 6 with eight drives, the number of data arms will be 8 – 2 = 6. In this case, if you are migrating from RAID 6 to RAID 0, RAID 0 must have a minimum of six drives. If you select lesser number of drives then **Edit** or **Save** button will be disabled. If you are adding, you can migrate to RAID 0 as you will not be deleting any drives. **Note** RAID level migration is not supported in the following cases: • When there are multiple virtual drives in a RAID group. • With a combination of SSD/HDD RAID groups.

Step 7 From the **Write Policy** drop-down list in the **Virtual Drive Properties** area, choose one of the following:

- **Write Through**— Data is written through the cache and to the physical drives. Performance is improved, because subsequent reads of that data can be satisfied from the cache.
- **Write Back**— Data is stored in the cache, and is only written to the physical drives when space in the cache is needed. Virtual drives requesting this policy fall back to **Write Through** caching when the BBU cannot guarantee the safety of the cache in the event of a power failure.
- **Write Back Bad BBU**—With this policy, write caching remains **Write Back** even if the battery backup unit is defective or discharged.

Step 8 Click **Save Changes**.

Deleting a Virtual Drive

Important This task deletes a virtual drive, including the drives that run the booted operating system. So back up any data that you want to retain before you delete a virtual drive.

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.
Step 2 On the **Storage** menu, click the appropriate LSI MegaRAID or HBA controller.
Step 3 In the **RAID Controller** area, click the **Virtual Drive Info** tab.
Step 4 In the **Virtual Drives** area, select the virtual drive you want to delete.
Step 5 In the **Actions** area, click **Delete Virtual Drive**.
Step 6 Click **OK** to confirm.

Hiding a Virtual Drive

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.
Step 2 On the **Storage** menu, click the appropriate LSI MegaRAID or HBA controller.
Step 3 On the **RAID Controller** area, click the **Virtual Drive Info** tab.
Step 4 In the **Virtual Drives** area, select the virtual drive you want to hide.
Step 5 In the **Actions** area, click **Hide Drive**.
Step 6 Click **OK** to confirm.

Starting Learn Cycles for a Battery Backup Unit

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.

Step 2 On the **Storage** menu, click the appropriate LSI MegaRAID or HBA controller.

Step 3 In the **RAID Controller** area, click the **Battery Backup Unit** tab.

Step 4 From the **Actions** pane, click **Start Learn Cycle**.

A dialog prompts you to confirm the task.

Step 5 Click **OK**.

Viewing Storage Controller Logs

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.

Step 2 On the **Storage** menu, click the appropriate LSI MegaRAID or HBA controller.

Step 3 In the **RAID Controller** area, click **Storage Log** tab and review the following information:

Name	Description
Time column	The date and time the event occurred.
Severity column	The event severity. This can be one of the following: • Emergency • Alert • Critical • Error • Warning • Notice • Informational • Debug
Description column	A description of the event.

Viewing SSD Smart Information for MegaRAID Controllers

You can view smart information for a solid state drive. Complete these steps:

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** tab.

Step 2 On the **Storage** menu, click the appropriate LSI MegaRAID Controller.

Step 3 On the **Work** pane, click the **Physical Drive Info** tab.

Step 4 In the **Smart Information** area, review the following information:

Name	Description
Power Cycle Count field	Number of power cycles that the drive went through from the time it was manufactured.
Power on Hours field	Total number of hours that the drive is in the 'Power On' mode.
Percentage Life Left field	The number of write cycles remaining in a solid state drive (SSD). For instance, if an SSD is capable of 100 write cycles during its life time, and it has completed 15 writes, then the percentage of life left in the drive is 85%. Each percentage range is represented in a different color. For instance, green for 75% to 100% and red for 1 to 25%.
Wear Status in Days field	The number of days an SSD has gone through with the write cycles. SSD vendors provide a finite number of writes per day on the SSD, based on which, you can calculate the total number of years the SSD would continue to work.
Operating Temperature field	The current temperature of the drive at which the selected SSD operates at the time of selection.
Percentage Reserved Capacity Consumed field	The total capacity (out of the percentage reserved for it) consumed by the SSD.
Time of Last Refresh field	Time period since the drive was last refreshed.

Viewing NVMe Controller Details

Before you begin

- The server must be powered on.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.

Step 2 In the **Storage** menu, click the appropriate NVMe controller.

Step 3 In the **Controller** area, the **Controller Info** tab displays by default.

Step 4 In the **Work** pane's **Health/Status** area, review the following information:

Name	Description
Composite Health field	The health of the controller. This can be one of the following: • **Good**- All the drives under the controller is in optimal state. • **Severe Fault**- When one or more drives under the controller is in faulty state. • **N/A**
Drive Count field	The number of drives configured on the controller.

Step 5 In the **Manufacturer Information** area, review the following information:

Name	Description
Vendor ID field	The vendor ID of the NVMe controller.
Product ID field	The controller product ID.
Component ID field	The component ID of the NVMe controller.
Product Revision field	The board revision number, if any.

Step 6 In the **Group PCI Info** area, review the following information:

Name	Description
Vendor ID field	The PCI vendor ID, in hexadecimal.
Device ID field	The PCI device ID, in hexadecimal.

Step 7 In the **Group Firmware Information** area, review the following information:

Name	Description
Running Firmware Images field	NVMe drive fimware version.

Step 8 In the **Group Switch Information** area, review the following information:

Name	Description
Temperature field	Temperature in degree centigrade of the switch.
Switch Status field	The current status of the switch. This can be one of the following: • **Optimal** — The controller is functioning properly. • **Failed** — The controller is not functioning. • **Unresponsive** — The controller is down.
Link Status field	The current status of the link. This field indicates if any of the upstream or downstream links in the switch are down. Individual drive also has a link status that can then be used to identify which drive causes the switch link status to be Link Degraded. This can be one of the following: • **Optimal** — The controller is functioning properly. • **Failed** — The controller is not functioning. • **Unresponsive** — The controller is down.
Shutdown Temperature field	This is the temperature beyond which the safe operation of switch is not guaranteed and recommends shutting down the system.

Viewing NVMe Physical Drive Details

Before you begin

- The server must be powered on.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.

Step 2 In the **Storage** menu, click the appropriate NVMe controller.

Step 3 Click **Physical Drive** tab and review the following information

Name	Description
Physical Drives column	The list of available physical drives.

Name	Description
PCI Slot column	The PCI slot number in which the physical drive resides.
Managed ID column	Internal ID referenced in debug.
Product Name column	The name of the drive as assigned by the vendor.
Firmware Version column	The firmware version running on the drive.
Vendor column	The drive vendor name.
Serial Number column	Drive serial number.

Step 4 **Physical Drives** Details

Note These details of a physical drive are displayed when you expand one of the listed physical drives.

Name	Description
PCI Slot field	The PCI slot number in which the physical drive resides.
Managed ID field	Internal ID referenced in debug.
Throttle State field	The state of the throttle.
Serial Number field	Controller serial number.
Chip Temperature field	Temperature of the drive in degree centigrade. This is the max temperature read from internal sensors in the drive.
Percentage Drive Life Used field	The percentage of the drive life that is used up.
Device ID field	The PCI device ID, in hexadecimal.
Sub Device ID field	The PCI subdevice ID, in hexadecimal.
Drive Status field	Status of the drive.
Performance Level field	Indicates the performance of the drive.
Shutdown Temperature field	Temperature at which the drive shuts down.
Percentage of Total Power On Hours field	The percentage of time the drive was powered on.
Vendor ID field	The PCI vendor ID, in hexadecimal.
SubVendor ID field	The PCI subvendor ID, in hexadecimal.
LED Fault Status field	The status of the LED fault.

Name	Description
Controller Temperature field	Temperature of the controller in degree centigrade. This is the overall composite temperature of the NVMe subsystem ID.
Running Firmware Images field	NVMe drive fimware version.
Throttle Start Temperature field	Temperature at which the drive starts to throttle.

Viewing PCI Switch Details

Before you begin

The server must be powered on, or the properties will not display.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.

Step 2 In the **Storage** menu, click the appropriate **PCI Switch** controller. Review the following information:

Controller Area

Name	Description
Composite Health field	Indicates the overall health status of the PCI switch. Displays if there are any correctable or uncorrectable errors and also reflects the status of the upstream and downstream ports.
PCI Slot field	PCI slot in which the controller is installed.
Controller Type field	Type of PCI controller present in the slot.
Product Name column	Name of the PCI controller.
Product Revision column	Displays the controller configuration revision information.

Switch Information Area

Name	Description
Temperature field	Temperature of the switch in degree Celsius.

Manufacturer Information Area

Name	Description
Manufacturer column	Manufacture of the PCI switch.

Name	Description
Vendor ID column	The switch ID assigned by the vendor.
Sub Vendor ID column	The secondary switch ID assigned by the vendor.
Device ID column	The device ID assigned by the vendor.
Sub Device ID column	The secondary device ID assigned by the vendor.

GPU and PCI Adapters Area

Name	Description
Slot column	Slot IDs in which GPUs or PCI Adapters are present.
Link Status column	The current status of the link. This field indicates if any of the upstream or downstream links in the switch are down.
Link Speed (GT/s) column	Displays the speed of an adapter card installed in the PCI slot.
Link Width column	The number of data lanes of the link.
Status column	Status of the adapter.

Starting Copyback Operation

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.

Step 2 On the **Storage** menu, click the appropriate LSI MegaRAID or HBA controller.

Step 3 In the **RAID Controller** area, click the **Physical Drive Info** tab.

Step 4 In the **Physical Drives** area, select a drive, which is in online state.

Step 5 In the **Actions** area, click **Start Copyback**.

Step 6 A **Start Copyback Operation** dialog box appears.

Step 7 Select the **Destination Physical Drive** to which the copyback operation needs to be done.

Step 8 Click **Start Copyback**.

Step 9 You can also perform the following copyback operations:

- **Pause Copyback** - If the drive is in copyback state, you can pause the copyback operation.
- **Resume Copyback**- The paused copyback operation can be resumed.
- **Abort Copyback** - If the drive is in copyback state, you can abort the copyback operation.

Managing the Flexible Flash Controller

Cisco Flexible Flash

On the M5 servers, Flexible Flash Controller is inserted into the mini storage module socket. The mini storage socket is inserted into the M.2 slot on the motherboard. M.2 slot also supports SATA M.2 SSD slots.

Note M.2 slot does not support NVMe in this release.

Some C-Series Rack-Mount Servers support an internal Secure Digital (SD) memory card for storage of server software tools and utilities. The SD card is hosted by the Cisco Flexible Flash storage adapter.

The SD storage is available to Cisco IMC as a single hypervisor (HV) partition configuration. Prior versions had four virtual USB drives. Three were preloaded with Cisco UCS Server Configuration Utility, Cisco drivers and Cisco Host Upgrade Utility, and the fourth as user-installed hypervisor. A single HV partition configuration is also created when you upgrade to the latest version of Cisco IMC or downgrade to the prior version, and reset the configuration.

For more information about installing and configuring the M.2 drives, see the **Storage Controller Considerations (Embbeded SATA RAID Requirements)** and **Replacing an M.2 SSD in a Mini-Storage Carrier For M.2** sections in the Cisco UCS Server Installation and Service Guide for the C240 M5 servers at this URL:

https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/servers-unified-computing/ucs-c-series-rack-servers/products-installation-guides-list.html

For information about the Cisco software utilities and packages, see the *Cisco UCS C-Series Servers Documentation Roadmap* at this URL:

http://www.cisco.com/go/unifiedcomputing/c-series-doc

Card Management Feature in the Cisco Flexible Flash Controller

The Cisco Flexible Flash controller supports management of both single and two SD cards as a RAID-1 pair. With the introduction of card management, you can perform the following tasks:

Note

- If you want to upgrade from version 1.4(5e) to 1.5(4) or higher versions, you must first upgrade to version1.5(2) and then upgrade to a higher version of Cisco IMC.
- Reset the Cisco Flexible Flash controller to load the latest Flex Flash firmware after every Cisco IMC firmware upgrade.

Action	Description
Reset Cisco Flex Flash	Allows you to reset the controller.
Reset Partition Defaults	Allows you to reset the configuration in the selected slot to the default configuration.

Action	Description
Synchronize Card Configuration	Allows you to retain the configuration for an SD card that supports firmware version 253 and later.
Configure Operational Profile	Allows you to configure the SD cards on the selected Cisco Flexible Flash controller.

RAID Partition Enumeration

Non-RAID partitions are always enumerated from the primary card and the enumeration does not depend on the status of the primary card.

Following is the behavior of the RAID partition enumeration when there are two cards in the Cisco Flexible Flash controller:

Scenario	Behavior
Single card	RAID partitions are enumerated if the card is healthy, and if the mode is either **Primary** or **Secondary-active**.
Dual paired cards	RAID partitions are enumerated if one of the cards is healthy. When only one card is healthy, all read/write operations occur on this healthy card. You must use UCS SCU to synchronize the two RAID partitions.
Dual unpaired cards	If this scenario is detected when the server is restarting, then neither one of the RAID partitions is enumerated. If this scenario is detected when the server is running, when a user connects a new SD card, then the cards are not managed by the Cisco Flexible Flash controller. This does not affect the host enumeration. You must pair the cards to manage them. You can pair the cards using the **Reset Partition Defaults** or **Synchronize Card Configuration** options.

Upgrading from Single Card to Dual Card Mirroring with FlexFlash

You can upgrade from a single card mirroring to dual card mirroring with FlexFlash in one of the following methods:

- Add an empty FlexFlash card to the server, and then upgrade its firmware to the latest version.
- Upgrade the FlexFlash firmware to the latest version and then add an empty card to the server.

Prior to using either of these methods, you must keep in mind the following guidelines:

- To create RAID1 mirroring, the empty card that you want to add to the server must be of the exact size of the card that is already in the server. Identical card size is a must to set up RAID1 mirroring.

- Ensure that the card with valid data in the Hypervisor partition is marked as the primary healthy card. You can determine this state either in the Cisco IMC GUI or from the Cisco IMC CLI. To mark the state of the card as primary healthy, you can either use the **Reset Configuration** option in the Cisco IMC GUI or run the **reset-config** command in the Cisco IMC CLI. When you reset the configuration of a particular card, the secondary card is marked as secondary active unhealthy.
- In a Degraded RAID health state all read-write transactions are done on the healthy card. In this scenario, data mirroring does not occur. Data mirroring occurs only in the Healthy RAID state.
- Data mirroring is only applicable to RAID partitions. In the C-series servers, only Hypervisor partitions operate in the RAID mode.
- If you have not configured SD cards for use with prior versions, then upgrading to the latest version loads the latest 253 firmware and enumerates all four partitions to the host.

While upgrading versions of the FlexFlash, you may see the following error message:

```
Unable to communicate with Flexible Flash controller: operation ffCardsGet, status
CY_AS_ERROR_INVALID_RESPONSE”
```

In addition, the card status may be shown as **missing**. This error occurs because you accidently switched to an alternate release or a prior version, such as 1.4(x). In this scenario, you can either revert to the latest version, or you can switch back to the FlexFlash 1.4(x) configuration. If you choose to revert to the latest Cisco IMC version, then the Cisco FlexFlash configuration remains intact. If you choose to switch back to the prior version configuration, you must reset the Flexflash configuration. In this scenario, you must be aware of the following:

- If multiple cards are present, and you revert to a prior version, then the second card cannot be discovered or managed.
- If the card type is SD253, then you must run the **reset-config** command twice from the Cisco IMC CLI - once to reload the old firmware on the controller and to migrate SD253 to SD247 type, and the second time to start the enumeration.

Configuring the Flexible Flash Controller Properties

After you upgrade to the latest verison of Cisco IMC or downgrade to a prior version, and reset the configuration, the server will access HV partition only.

Before you begin

- You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.
- Cisco Flexible Flash must be supported by your platform.

Note This task results in the host re-scanning all the virtual drives, and a loss of virtual drive connectivity. We recommend that you configure the Cisco Flexible Flash controller properties before using any virtual drives, or power down the host prior to starting this task

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** tab.

Step 2 On the **Storage** tab, click **Cisco FlexFlash**.

Step 3 In the **Controller Info** tab, click **Configure Operational Profile**.

Step 4 In the Operational Profile dialog box, update the following fields:

Table 7: Operational Profile Fields for M5 Servers

Name	Description
Controller field	The system-defined name of the selected Cisco Flexible Flash controller. This name cannot be changed.
Firmware Operating Mode field	System displayed message. Displays the firmware operating mode as Mirror.
SLOT-1 Read Error Threshold field	The number of read errors that are permitted while accessing Slot 1 of the Cisco Flexible Flash card. If the number of read errors exceeds this threshold on a card, the card is marked unhealthy. To specify a read error threshold, enter an integer between 1 and 255. To specify that the card should never be disabled regardless of the number of errors encountered, enter `0` (zero).
SLOT-1 Write Error Threshold field	The number of write errors that are permitted while accessing Slot 1 of the Cisco Flexible Flash card. If the number of write errors exceeds this threshold on a card, the card is marked unhealthy. To specify a write error threshold, enter an integer between 1 and 255. To specify that the card should never be disabled regardless of the number of errors encountered, enter `0` (zero).

Step 5 Click **Save**.

Configuring the Flexible Flash Controller Cards

Before you begin

- You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.
- Cisco Flexible Flash must be supported by your platform.

Note This task results in the host re-scanning all the virtual drives, and a loss of virtual drive connectivity. We recommend that you configure the Cisco Flexible Flash controller properties before using any virtual drives, or power down the host prior to starting this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** tab.

Step 2 On the **Storage** tab, click **Cisco FlexFlash**.

Step 3 In the **Actions** area, click **Configure Cards**.
Configure Cards dialog box appears.

Step 4 In the **Configure Cards** dialog box, update the following fields:

Name	Description
Mode field	Displays the mode type as Mirror.
Mirror Partition Name field	The name that you want to assign to the partition.
Auto Sync checkbox	If selected, data from the selected primary card syncs automatically with the secondary card. **Note** • There must be two cards for you to choose this option. • If this option is selected, data on the secondary card is erased and overwritten by the data on the primary card. • The status of this is displayed under the **Virtual Drive** tab.
Select Primary Card drop-down	Slot that you want to set as the primary card. This can be one of the following: • **Slot1** • **Slot2**
Virtual Drive drop-down	The virtual drive type. This can be one of the following: • **Removable** • **Non Removable**

Step 5 Click **Save**.

The cards are configured in the chosen mode.

Resetting the Flexible Flash Controller

In normal operation, it should not be necessary to reset the Cisco Flexible Flash. We recommend that you perform this procedure only when explicitly directed to do so by a technical support representative.

Note This operation will disrupt traffic to the virtual drives on the Cisco Flexible Flash controller.

Before you begin

- You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.
- Cisco Flexible Flash must be supported by your platform.

Procedure

Step 1 On the **Storage Adapters** pane, click **Cisco FlexFlash**.
Step 2 In the **Cisco FlexFlash** pane, click the **Controller Info** tab.
Step 3 In the **Actions** area, click **Reset FlexFlash Controller**.
Step 4 Click **OK** to confirm.

Enabling Virtual Drives

Before you begin

- You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.
- Cisco Flexible Flash must be supported by your platform.

Note This task results in the host re-scanning all the virtual drives, and a loss of virtual drive connectivity. We recommend that you configure the Cisco Flexible Flash controller properties before using any virtual drives.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** tab.
Step 2 On the **Storage** tab, click **Cisco FlexFlash**.
Step 3 Click the **Virtual Drive Info** tab.
Step 4 In the **Virtual Drive Info** tab, click **Enable/Disable Virtual Drive(s)**.
Step 5 In the **Enable/Disable VD(s)** dialog box, select the virtual drives that you want to enable.
Step 6 Click **Save**.
The selected virtual drives are enabled to the host.

Erasing Virtual Drives

Before you begin

- You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

- Cisco Flexible Flash must be supported by your platform.

Note This task results in the host re-scanning all the virtual drives, and a loss of virtual drive connectivity. We recommend that you configure the Cisco Flexible Flash controller properties before using any virtual drives.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** tab.
Step 2 On the **Storage** tab, click **Cisco FlexFlash**.
Step 3 Click the **Virtual Drive Info** tab.
Step 4 In the **Virtual Drive Info** tab, click **Erase Virtual Drive(s)**.
Step 5 In the **Erase Virtual Drive(s)** dialog box, select the virtual drives that you want to erase.
Step 6 Click **Save**.
Data on the selected virtual drives is erased.

Syncing Virtual Drives

Before you begin

- You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.
- Cisco Flexible Flash must be supported by your platform.
- Cards must be in mirror mode.

Note This task results in the host re-scanning all the virtual drives, and a loss of virtual drive connectivity. We recommend that you configure the Cisco Flexible Flash controller properties before using any virtual drives.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** tab.
Step 2 On the **Storage** tab, click **Cisco FlexFlash**.
Step 3 Click the **Virtual Drive Info** tab.
Step 4 In the **Virtual Drive Info** tab, click **Sync Virtual Drive**.
Step 5 Click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box.
Syncs the virtual drive hypervisor with the primary card.

Viewing FlexFlash Log Details

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.

Step 2 In the **Storage** menu, click the Cisco Flexible Flash Controller.

Step 3 In the **FlexFlash Logs** tab's **FlexFlash LogTable** area, review the following fields:

Name	Description
Time column	The date and time the event occurred.
Severity column	The event severity. This can be one of the following: • Emergency • Alert • Critical • Error • Warning • Info • Notice • Debug
Description column	A description of the event.

Step 4 In the **FlexFlash Logs** tab's **Actions** area, review the following fields:

Name	Description
Show drop-down list	Customize the way you want to view Cisco IMC log entries using filters. These can be: • **Quick Filter**— Default view • **Advanced Filter**— Filter options to display the log entries based on one or more criteria. Using the matching rule, you can view entries matching all the rules or any one combination of rules you specified in the Filter fields. Click + to add new filtering criteria. Click **Go** to view the entries matching the filter criteria that you set. Click the **Save** icon to save the filter criteria that you set. This becomes a user-defined filter which you can use later. **Note** The user-defined filter appears in the **Manage Preset Filters** dialog box. • **All**—Displays all entries • **Manage Preset Filters**—Displays user-defined filters. You can edit or remove the user-defined filter from this dialog box. • **List of pre-defined filters**— Displays the system-defined filters.
Filter icon	Displays or hides the quick filter fields.
Column drop-down list	Allows you to choose the columns you want to view.

Step 5 In the **FlexFlash Logs** tab's **Log Navigation Toolbar** area, review the following fields:

Name	Description
<<Newest	If there are more events than can fit on a single page, click this link to view the newest entries. The total number of entries displayed depends on the setting in the **Entries per Page** drop-down list.
<Newer	If there are more events than can fit on a single page, click this link to view the next page of entries that are newer than the set you are currently viewing.
Log Entries field	This field displays which log entries are currently being shown in the table.

Name	Description
Older>	If there are more events than can fit on a single page, click this link to view the next page of entries that are older than the set you are currently viewing.
Oldest>>	If there are more events than can fit on a single page, click this link to view the oldest entries.
Page Number drop-down list	Allows you to navigate to a specific page. Select the page number from the drop-down list.
Number of Rows field	Displays the rows displayed in the current page.

Managing the FlexUtil Controller

The C-Series M5 Rack-Mount servers support microSD memory card for storage of server software tools and utilities. Riser 1 has this microSD memory card slot. Cisco FlexUtil supports only 32GB microSD card.

The following user visible partitions are present on the microSD card:

- Server Configuration Utility (SCU) – 1.25 GB
- Diagnostics – 0.25 GB
- Host Update Utility (HUU) – 1.5 GB
- Drivers – 8 GB
- User

Note The number of partitions and size of each partition on microSD is fixed.

At any time, two partitions can be mapped onto the host. These partitions (except the user partition) can also be updated through a CIFS or NFS share. A second level BIOS boot order support is also available for all the bootable partitions.

Note User partition must be used only for storage. This partition does not support OS installations.

Configuring FlexUtil Controller Properties

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.

Step 2 In the **Storage** menu, click the Cisco FlexUtil Controller.

Step 3 In the **General** tab's **Actions** area, click **Configure Operational Profile**.

Step 4 In the **Operational Profile** dialog box, update the following fields.

Name	Description
Controller field	The system-defined name of the selected Flex Util controller. This name cannot be changed.
Read Error Threshold field	The number of read errors that are permitted while accessing the Flex Util card. If the number of read errors exceeds this threshold on a card, the card is marked unhealthy. To specify a read error threshold, enter an integer between 1 and 255. To specify that the card should never be disabled regardless of the number of errors encountered, enter `0` (zero).
Write Error Threshold field	The number of write errors that are permitted while accessing the Flex Util card. If the number of write errors exceeds this threshold on a card, the card is marked unhealthy. To specify a write error threshold, enter an integer between 1 and 255. To specify that the card should never be disabled regardless of the number of errors encountered, enter `0` (zero).

Resetting FlexUtil Card Configuration

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.

Step 2 In the **Storage** menu, click the Cisco FlexUtil Controller.

Step 3 In the **General** tab's **Actions** area, click **Reset Card Configuration**.

This action resets the FlexUtil card configuration to its default settings.

Viewing Cisco FlexUtil Controller Properties

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.

Step 2 In the **Storage** menu, click the Cisco FlexUtil Controller.

Step 3 In the **General** tab's **General** area, review the following fields:

Name	Description
Product Name field	The name of the product.
Controller Name field	The name for the controller.
Controller Status field	The current status of the FlexUtil card. This can be one of the following: • **Card is absent** • **Card is Unhealthy** • **Metadata Read Error** • **Card access error** • **Invalid Card size** • **Metadata is in failed state** • **No partition, reset required** • **Invalid partition, reset required** • **Card is write protected**

Name	Description
Internal State field	The internal state of the controller. This can be one of the following: • **Uninitialized**—FlexUtil monitoring is not initialized. • **Initializing**—FlexUtil monitoring is initializing. • **Configuring**—The controller is determining the FlexUtil card configuration. • **OK**—The FlexUtil card is not connected to the host. • **Connecting**—The controller is connecting to the host. • **Connected**—The controller is connected to the host. • **Failed**—The controller has failed. See the **Controller Status** field for more details. • **Erasing**—The FlexUtil card is being erased. • **Updating**—The FlexUtil card is being updated. • **Resetting**—The configuration on the card is reset.

Step 4 In the **General** tab's **Physical Drive Count** area, review the following fields:

Name	Description
Physical Drive Count field	The number of FlexUtil cards detected in the server.

Step 5 In the **General** tab's **Virtual Drive Count** area, review the following fields:

Name	Description
Virtual Drive Count field	The number of virtual drives configured on the FlexUtil cards installed in the server.

Viewing Physical Drive Properties

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.

Step 2 In the **Storage** menu, click the Cisco FlexUtil Controller.

Step 3 In the **Physical Drive** tab's **General** area, review the following fields:

Name	Description
Drive	Name of the drive.
Drive Status	Indicates whether the drive is present.
Serial Number field	The serial number for the FlexUtil card.
Manufacturer ID field	The manufacturer ID for the FlexUtil card.
OEM ID field	The OEM ID for the FlexUtil card, if any.
Product Name field	The name of the FlexUtil card.
Product Revision field	The revision number for the FlexUtil card.
Manufacturing Date field	The date the FlexUtil card was manufactured, in the format mm/yy.
Write Enabled field	If this field displays **true**, the FlexUtil card accepts writes.
Block Size field	The block size on the FlexUtil card, in bytes.
Capacity field	The capacity of the FlexUtil card, in megabytes.
Health	This can be one of the following: • **Healthy** • **Unhealthy**

Step 4 In the **Physical Drive** tab's **Error Counters** area, review the following fields.

Name	Description
Read Error Threshold field	The number of read errors that are permitted while accessing the FlexUtil card.
Read Error Count field	The number of read errors encountered while handling I/O traffic since the FlexUtil card was first installed.
Write Error Threshold field	The number of write errors that are permitted while accessing the FlexUtil card.
Write Error Count field	The number of write errors encountered while handling I/O traffic since the FlexUtil card was first installed.

Step 5 In the **Physical Drive** tab's **Partition** area, review the following fields.

Name	Description
Partition Count field	The number of partitions on the FlexUtil card.
Drives Enabled field	The virtual drives enabled for access on the FlexUtil card.

Viewing Virtual Drive Properties

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.

Step 2 In the **Storage** menu, click the Cisco FlexUtil Controller.

Step 3 In the **Virtual Drive** tab's **Virtual Drives** area, review the following fields.

Name	Description
Virtual Drive column	The name of the virtual drive.
ID column	Virtual drive ID.
LUN ID	The LUN ID, if available.
Drive Scope column	How the virtual drive is configured. This will always be **NON RAID**.
Size column	The size of the virtual drive in megabytes.
Drive Status column	Status of the drive. This can be one of the following: • **Healthy** • **Unhealthy**
Host Accessible column	Indicates whether the virtual drive is mapped to the host. This can be one of the following: • **Connected** • **Not-Connected** If this field displays **connected**, it means the virtual drive is mapped to the host.
Drive Type column	Type of the drive. This will always be **Removable**.

Name	Description
Operation in Progress column	Operation that is in progress. This can be one of the following: • **Erasing** • **Erase-Pending** • **Updating** • **Update-Pending** • **NA** **Note** If your reboot Cisco IMC while any operation is running, the operation will be aborted and after the reboot the state of the operation will be set to NA.
Last Operation Status column	Status of the last operation. This can be one of the following: • **Erase-Success** • **Erase-Failed** • **Update-Success** • **Update-Failed**

Step 4 In the **Virtual Drive** tab's **Actions** area, review the following fields.

Name	Description
Enable/Disable Virtual Drive(s)	Allows you to enable or disable a virtual drive.
Erase Virtual Drive(s)	Allows you to format the virtual drives to FAT 32 format. **Note** You cannot cancel an erase operation in progress or a pending erase operation.
Add Image	Allows you to add an ISO image configuration for the SCU, HUU, Diagnostics, and Drivers.
Update Image	Allows you to update virtual drive with the ISO image. **Note** • When erase or update is in progress or pending on any virtual drive, you cannot perform any actions available on the **Virtual** tab. • Use the **Cancel Update** button to cancel an ongoing update operation.

Name	Description
Cancel Update	Cancels any ongoing update operation.
Unmap Image	Allows you to delete the ISO image configuration.

Mapping an Image to a Virtual Drive

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.

Step 2 In the **Storage** menu, click the Cisco FlexUtil Controller.

Step 3 Click the **Virtual Drives** tab.

Step 4 In the **Virtual Drives** area, select the virtual drive, and click **Add Image**.

Step 5 In the **Add New Image** dialog box, update the following fields:

Name	Description
Volume field	The identity of the image mounted for mapping. This can be one of the following: • **SCU** • **Diagnostics** • **HUU** • **Drivers**
Mount Type drop-down list	The type of mapping. This can be one of the following: • **NFS**—Network File System. • **CIFS**—Common Internet File System. • **WWW(HTTP/HTTPS)**—HTTP-based or HTTPS-based system.
Remote Share field	The URL of the image to be mapped. The format depends on the selected **Mount Type**: • **NFS**—Use **`serverip:/share path`**. • **CIFS**—Use **`//serverip/share path`**. • **WWW(HTTP/HTTPS)**—Use http[s]://serverip/share.

Name	Description
Remote File field	The name and location of the .iso file in the remote share. Following are the example of remote share files: • **NFS** — **`/softwares/ucs-cxx-scu-3.1.9.iso`** • **CIFS** — **`/softwares/ucs-cxx-scu-3.1.9.iso`** • **WWW(HTTP/HTTPS)** — **`http[s]://softwares/ucs-cxx-scu-3.1.9.iso`**
Mount Options field	Industry-standard mount options entered in a comma separated list. The options vary depending on the selected **Mount Type**. If you are using **NFS**, leave the field blank or enter one or more of the following: • **`ro`** • **`rw`** • **`nolock`** • **`noexec`** • **`soft`** • **`port=VALUE`** • **`timeo=VALUE`** • **`retry=VALUE`** If you are using **CIFS**, leave the field blank or enter one or more of the following: • **`soft`** • **`nounix`** • **`noserverino`** If you are using **WWW(HTTP/HTTPS)**, leave the field blank or enter the following: • **`noauto`** **Note** Before mounting the image, Cisco IMC tries to verify reachability to the end server by pinging the server. • **`username=VALUE`** • **`password=VALUE`**

Step 6 Optional: The **Add Image** button is a toggle button. After you map an image, if you want to unmap the same image from the drive, select the virtual drive, and click **Unmap Image**.

Updating an Image on the Virtual Drive

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.

Step 2 In the **Storage** menu, click the Cisco FlexUtil Controller.

Step 3 Click the **Virtual Drives** tab.

Step 4 In the **Virtual Drives** area, select the virtual drive for which you want to update an image and click **Update Image**.

Step 5 Optional: If you want to cancel an ongoing update operation, click **Cancel Update**.

Unmapping an Image From a Virtual Drive

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.

Step 2 In the **Storage** menu, click the Cisco FlexUtil Controller.

Step 3 Click the **Virtual Drives** tab.

Step 4 In the **Virtual Drives** area, select the virtual drive for which you want to delete the image and click **Unmap Image**.

Erasing a Virtual Drive

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Storage** menu.
Step 2 In the **Storage** menu, click the Cisco FlexUtil Controller.
Step 3 Click the **Virtual Drives** tab.
Step 4 In the **Virtual Drives** area, select the virtual drive you want to erase, and click **Erase Virtual Drive**.

Scrub Policy

Scrub Policy Settings

This policy determines what happens to local data and to the BIOS settings on a server during the discovery process, when the server is re-acknowledged, or when the server is disassociated from a service profile.

Note Local disk scrub policies only apply to hard drives that are managed by Cisco UCS Manager and do not apply to other devices such as USB drives.

Depending upon how you configure a scrub policy, the following can occur at those times:

Disk scrub

One of the following occurs to the data on any local drives on disassociation:

- If enabled, destroys all data on any local drives.
- If disabled (default), preserves all data on any local drives, including local storage configuration.

Scrub policies are supported on all B-Series platforms and only on the following C-Series platforms:

BIOS Settings Scrub

One of the following occurs to the BIOS settings when a service profile containing the scrub policy is disassociated from a server:

- If enabled, erases all BIOS settings for the server and resets them to the BIOS defaults for that server type and vendor.
- If disabled (default), preserves the existing BIOS settings on the server.

FlexFlash Scrub

FlexFlash Scrub enables you to pair new or degraded SD cards, resolve FlexFlash metadata configuration failures, and migrate older SD cards with 4 partitions to single partition SD cards. One of the following occurs to the SD card when a service profile containing the scrub policy is disassociated from a server, or when the server is reacknowledged:

- If enabled, the HV partition on the SD card is formatted using the PNUOS formatting utility. If two SD cards are present, the cards are RAID-1 paired, and the HV partitions in both cards are marked as valid. The card in slot 1 is marked as primary, and the card in slot 2 is marked as secondary.
- If disabled (default), preserves the existing SD card settings.

Note

- Because the FlexFlash scrub erases the HV partition on the SD cards, we recommend that you take a full backup of the SD card(s) using your preferred host operating system utilities before performing the FlexFlash scrub.
- To resolve metadata config failures in a service profile, you need to disable FlexFlash in the local disk config policy before you run the FlexFlash scrub, then enable FlexFlash after the server is reacknowledged.
- Disable the scrub policy as soon as the pairing is complete or the metadata failures are resolved.
- FlexFlash scrub is not supported for Cisco UCS S3260 Storage Server.

Creating a Scrub Policy

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click **Servers**.

Step 2 Expand **Servers** > **Policies**.

Step 3 Expand the node for the organization where you want to create the policy.

If the system does not include multitenancy, expand the **root** node.

Step 4 Right-click **Scrub Policies** and select **Create Scrub Policy**.

Step 5 In the **Create Scrub Policy** wizard, complete the following fields:

Name	Description
Name field	The name of the policy. This name can be between 1 and 16 alphanumeric characters. You cannot use spaces or any special characters other than - (hyphen), _ (underscore), : (colon), and . (period), and you cannot change this name after the object is saved.
Description field	A description of the policy. Cisco recommends including information about where and when to use the policy. Enter up to 256 characters. You can use any characters or spaces except ` (accent mark), \ (backslash), ^ (carat), " (double quote), = (equal sign), > (greater than), < (less than), or ' (single quote).

Name	Description
Disk Scrub field	If this field is set to **Yes**, when a service profile containing this scrub policy is disassociated from a server, all data on the server local drives is completely erased. If this field is set to **No**, the data on the local drives is preserved, including all local storage configuration.
BIOS Settings Scrub field	If the field is set to **Yes**, when a service profile containing this scrub policy is disassociated from a server, the BIOS settings for that server are erased and reset to the defaults for that server type and vendor. If this field is set to **No**, the BIOS settings are preserved.
FlexFlash Scrub field	If the field is set to **Yes**, the HV partition on the SD card is formatted using the PNUOS formatting utility when the server is reacknowledged. If this field is set to **No**, the SD card is preserved.

Step 6 Click **OK**.

Note Disk scrub and FlexFlash Scrub options are not supported for Cisco UCS S3260 Storage Server.

Deleting a Scrub Policy

Procedure

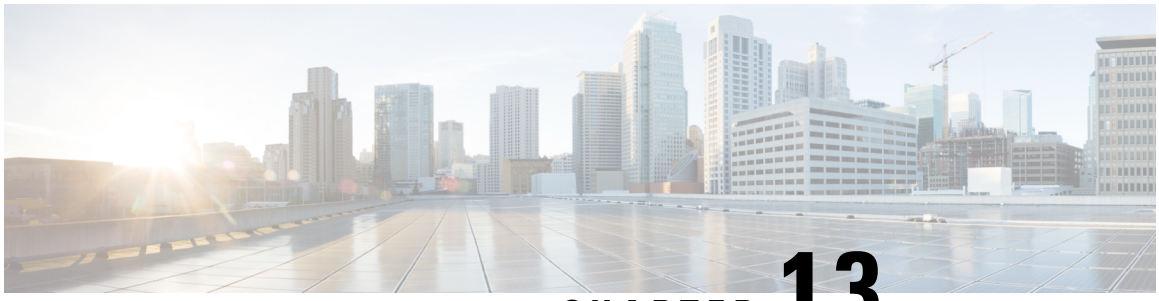
Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click **Servers**.

Step 2 Expand **Servers** > **Policies** > *Organization_Name*.

Step 3 Expand the **Scrub Policies** node.

Step 4 Right-click the policy you want to delete and select **Delete**.

Step 5 If a confirmation dialog box displays, click **Yes**.



CHAPTER 13

Configuring Communication Services

This chapter includes the following sections:

Configuring HTTP

Before you begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Communication Services**.

Step 3 In the **HTTP Properties** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
HTTP/S Enabled check box	Whether HTTP and HTTPS are enabled on the Cisco IMC.
Redirect HTTP to HTTPS Enabled check box	If enabled, all attempts to communicate via HTTP are redirected to the equivalent HTTPS address. We strongly recommend that you enable this option if you enable HTTP.
HTTP Port field	The port to use for HTTP communication. The default is 80.
HTTPS Port field	The port to use for HTTPS communication. The default is 443

Name	Description
Session Timeout field	The number of seconds to wait between HTTP requests before the Cisco IMC times out and terminates the session. Enter an integer between 60 and 10,800. The default is 1,800 seconds.
Max Sessions field	The maximum number of concurrent HTTP and HTTPS sessions allowed on the Cisco IMC. This value may not be changed.
Active Sessions field	The number of HTTP and HTTPS sessions currently running on the Cisco IMC.

Step 4 Click **Save Changes**.

Configuring SSH

Before you begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to configure SSH.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Communication Services**.

Step 3 In the **SSH Properties** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
SSH Enabled check box	Whether SSH is enabled on the Cisco IMC.
SSH Port field	The port to use for secure shell access. The default is 22.
SSH Timeout field	The number of seconds to wait before the system considers an SSH request to have timed out. Enter an integer between 60 and 10,800. The default is 1,800 seconds.
Max Sessions field	The maximum number of concurrent SSH sessions allowed on the Cisco IMC. This value may not be changed.
Active Sessions field	The number of SSH sessions currently running on the Cisco IMC.

Step 4 Click **Save Changes**.

Configuring XML API

XML API for Cisco IMC

The Cisco Cisco IMC XML application programming interface (API) is a programmatic interface to Cisco IMC for a C-Series Rack-Mount Server. The API accepts XML documents through HTTP or HTTPS.

For detailed information about the XML API, see *Cisco UCS Rack-Mount Servers Cisco IMC XML API Programmer's Guide*.

Enabling the XML API

Before you begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Communication Services**.

Step 3 In the **XML API Properties** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
XML API Enabled check box	Whether API access is allowed on this server.
Max Sessions field	The maximum number of concurrent API sessions allowed on the Cisco IMC. This value may not be changed.
Active Sessions field	The number of API sessions currently running on the Cisco IMC.

Step 4 Click **Save Changes**.

Enabling Redfish

Before you begin

You must be logged in as admin to perform this action.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.

Step 2 On the **Admin** tab, click **Communications Services**.

Step 3 In the **Redfish Properties** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
XML API Enabled check box	Whether API access is allowed on this server.
Max Sessions field	The maximum number of concurrent API sessions allowed on the Cisco IMC. This value may not be changed.
Active Sessions field	The number of API sessions currently running on the Cisco IMC.

Step 4 Click **Save Changes**.

Configuring IPMI

IPMI Over LAN

Intelligent Platform Management Interface (IPMI) defines the protocols for interfacing with a service processor embedded in a server platform. This service processor is called a Baseboard Management Controller (BMC) and resides on the server motherboard. The BMC links to a main processor and other on-board elements using a simple serial bus.

During normal operations, IPMI lets a server operating system obtain information about system health and control system hardware. For example, IPMI enables the monitoring of sensors, such as temperature, fan speeds and voltages, for proactive problem detection. If server temperature rises above specified levels, the server operating system can direct the BMC to increase fan speed or reduce processor speed to address the problem.

Configuring IPMI over LAN

Configure IPMI over LAN when you want to manage the Cisco IMC with IPMI messages.

Note

- If you would want to run IPMI commands without issuing an encryption key, set the **Encryption Key** field in Cisco IMC to any even number of zeroes and save. This allows you to issue IPMI commands without including an encryption key.
- You are only allowed a maximum of four concurrent IPMI sessions.

Before you begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Communication Services**.

Step 3 In the **IPMI over LAN Properties** area, update the following properties for BMC 1, BMC 2, CMC 1, or CMC 2:

Name	Description
Enabled check box	Whether IPMI access is allowed on this server.
Privilege Level Limit drop-down list	The highest privilege level that can be assigned to an IPMI session on this server. This can be one of the following: • **read-only**—IPMI users can view information but cannot make any changes. If you select this option, IPMI users with the "Administrator", "Operator", or "User" user roles can only create read-only IPMI sessions, regardless of their other IPMI privileges. • **user**—IPMI users can perform some functions but cannot perform administrative tasks. If you select this option, IPMI users with the "Administrator" or "Operator" user role can create user and read-only sessions on this server. • **admin**—IPMI users can perform all available actions. If you select this option, IPMI users with the "Administrator" user role can create admin, user, and read-only sessions on this server.
Encryption Key field	The IPMI encryption key to use for IPMI communications.
Randomize button	Enables you to change the IPMI encryption key to a random value.

Step 4 Click **Save Changes**.

Configuring SNMP

SNMP

The Cisco UCS C-Series Rack-Mount Servers support the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) for viewing server configuration and status and for sending fault and alert information by SNMP traps. For information on Management Information Base (MIB) files supported by Cisco IMC, see the *MIB Quick Reference for Cisco UCS* at this URL: http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/sw/mib/b-series/b_UCS_MIBRef.html.

Configuring SNMP Properties

Before you begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Communication Services**.

Step 3 In the **Communications Services** pane, click the **SNMP** tab.

Step 4 In the **SNMP Properties** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
SNMP Enabled check box	Whether this server sends SNMP traps to the designated host. **Note** After you check this check box, you need to click **Save Changes** before you can configure SNMP users or traps.
SNMP Port field	The port on which Cisco IMC SNMP agent runs. Enter an SNMP port number within the range 1 to 65535. The default port number is 161. **Note** The port numbers that are reserved for system calls, such as 22,23,80,123,443,623,389,636,3268,3269 and 2068, cannot be used as an SNMP port.
Access Community String field	The default SNMP v1 or v2c community name Cisco IMC includes on any SNMP get operations. Enter a string up to 18 characters.
SNMP Community Access drop-down list	This can be one of the following: • **Disabled** — This option blocks access to the information in the inventory tables. • **Limited** — This option provides partial access to read the information in the inventory tables. • **Full** — This option provides full access to read the information in the inventory tables. **Note** SNMP Community Access is applicable only for SNMP v1 and v2c users.

Name	Description
Trap Community String field	The name of the SNMP community group used for sending SNMP trap to other devices. Enter a string up to 18 characters. **Note** This field is visible only for SNMP v1 and v2c users. SNMP v3 users need to use SNMP v3 credentials.
System Contact field	The system contact person responsible for the SNMP implementation. Enter a string up to 64 characters, such as an email address or a name and telephone number.
System Location field	The location of the host on which the SNMP agent (server) runs. Enter a string up to 64 characters.
SNMP Input Engine ID field	User-defined unique identification of the static engine.
SNMP Engine ID field	Unique string to identify the device for administration purpose. This is generated from the SNMP Input Engine ID if it is already defined, else it is derived from the BMC serial number.

Step 5 Click **Save Changes**.

What to do next

Configure SNMP trap settings.

Configuring SNMP Trap Settings

Before you begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.
Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Communication Services**.
Step 3 In the **Communications Services** pane, click the **SNMP** tab.
Step 4 Click on **Trap Destinations** tab.
Step 5 In the **Trap Destinations** area, you can perform one of the following:

- Select an existing user from the table and click **Modify Trap**.
- Click **Add Trap** to create a new user.

Note If the fields are not highlighted, select **Enabled**.

Step 6 In the **Trap Details** dialog box, complete the following fields:

Name	Description
ID field	The trap destination ID. This value cannot be modified.
Enabled check box drop-down list	If checked, then this trap is active on the server.
Version drop-down list	The SNMP version and model used for the trap. This can be one of the following: • **V2** • **V3**
Trap Type radio button drop-down list	The type of trap to send. This can be one of the following: • **Trap**: If this option is chosen, the trap will be sent to the destination but you do not receive any notifications. • **Inform**: You can choose this option only for V2 users. If chosen, you will receive a notification when a trap is received at the destination.
User drop-down list	The drop-down list displays all available users, select a user from the list.
Trap Destination Address field	Address to which the SNMP trap information is sent. You can set an IPv4 or IPv6 address or a domain name as the trap destination.
Port	The port the server uses to communicate with the trap destination. Enter a trap destination port number within the range 1 to 65535.

Step 7 Click **Save Changes**.

Step 8 If you want to delete a trap destination, select the row and click **Delete**.

Click **OK** in the delete confirmation prompt.

Sending a Test SNMP Trap Message

Before you begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Communication Services**.

Step 3 In the **Communication Services** pane, click **SNMP**.

Step 4 In the **Trap Destinations** area, select the row of the desired SNMP trap destination.

Step 5 Click **Send SNMP Test Trap**.

An SNMP test trap message is sent to the trap destination.

Note The trap must be configured and enabled in order to send a test message.

Managing SNMP Users

Before you begin

- You must log in as a user with admin privileges to perform this task.
- SNMP must be enabled.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Communication Services**.

Step 3 In the **Communications Services** pane, click the **SNMP** tab.

Step 4 In the **User Settings** area, update the following properties:

Name	Description
Add User button	Click an available row in the table then click this button to add a new SNMP user.
Modify User button	Select the user you want to change in the table then click this button to modify the selected SNMP user.
Delete User button	Select the user you want to delete in the table then click this button to delete the selected SNMP user.
ID column	The system-assigned identifier for the SNMP user.
Name column	The SNMP user name.
Auth Type column	The user authentication type.
Privacy Type column	The user privacy type.

Step 5 Click **Save Changes**.

Configuring SNMP Users

Before you begin

- You must log in as a user with admin privileges to perform this task.
- SNMP must be enabled.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Communication Services**.

Step 3 In the **Communications Services** pane, click the **SNMP** tab.

Step 4 In the **User Settings** area, perform one of the following actions:

- Select an existing user from the table and click **Modify User**.
- Select a row in the **Users** area and click **Add User** to create a new user.

Step 5 In the **SNMP User Details** dialog box, update the following properties:

Name	Description
ID field	The unique identifier for the user. This field cannot be changed.
Name field	The SNMP username. Enter between 1 and 31 characters or spaces. **Note** Cisco IMC automatically trims leading or trailing spaces.
Security Level drop-down list	The security level for this user. This can be one of the following: • **no auth, no priv**—The user does not require an authorization or privacy password. • **auth, no priv**—The user requires an authorization password but not a privacy password. If you select this option, Cisco IMC enables the Auth fields described below. • **auth, priv**—The user requires both an authorization password and a privacy password. If you select this option, Cisco IMC enables the Auth and Privacy fields.
Auth Type drop-down	The authorization type. This can be one of the following: • **MD5** • **SHA**

Name	Description
Auth Password field	The authorization password for this SNMP user. Enter between 8 and 64 characters or spaces. **Note** Cisco IMC automatically trims leading or trailing spaces.
Confirm Auth Password field	The authorization password again for confirmation purposes.
Privacy Type drop-down	The privacy type. This can be one of the following: • **DES** • **AES**
Privacy Password field	The privacy password for this SNMP user. Enter between 8 and 64 characters or spaces. **Note** Cisco IMC automatically trims leading or trailing spaces.
Confirm Privacy Password field	The authorization password again for confirmation purposes.

Step 6 Click **Save Changes**.

Step 7 If you want to delete a user, select the user and click **Delete User**.

Click **OK** in the delete confirmation prompt.

Configuring a Server to Send Email Alerts Using SMTP

The Cisco IMC supports email-based notification of server faults to recipients without relying on the SNMP. The system uses the Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) to send server faults as email alerts to the configured SMTP server.

A maximum of four recipients is supported.

Configuring SMTP Server For Receiving Email Alerts

Configure the SMTP properties and add email recipients on the **Mail Alert** tab to receive email notifications for server faults.

Before you begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Communication Services**.

Step 3 In the **Communications Services** pane, click the **Mail Alert** tab.

Step 4 In the **SMTP Properties** area, update the following properties.

Name	Description
SMTP Enabled checkbox	If checked, it enables the SMTP service.
SMTP Server Address field	Allows you to enter the SMTP server address.
SMTP Port field	Allows you to enter the SMTP port number. The default port number is 25.
Minimum Severity to Report drop-down list	Allows you to choose the minimum severity level for receiving the email alert. This can be one of the following: • Condition • Warning • Minor • Major • Critical If you choose a minimum severity level, the mail alerts are sent for that level and the other higher severity levels. For example, if you choose 'Minor' as the minimum severity level, you will receive email alerts for the minor, major, and critical fault events.

Step 5 In the **SMTP Recipients** area, do the following:

a) Click the **Add (+)** button to add the email recipients to whom notifications should be sent. Enter the email ID and click **Save**.

To delete an email recipient, select the email recipient and click the **Delete (X)** button.

b) Click **Send Test Mail** to check whether the email recipient you added is reachable.
If the email address and the SMTP settings are valid, a confirmation pop-up window appears with the message that an email has been sent. If the settings are not valid, a confirmation pop-up window appears with the message that no email has been sent. The **Reachability** column indicates whether test mails have been sent successfully to the email recipient. The **Reachability** column has one of the following values:

- **Yes** (if the test mail has been sent successfully)
- **No** (if the test mail has not been sent successfully)
- **na** (if no test mail has been sent)

Step 6 Click **Save Changes**.

Troubleshooting

The following table describes troubleshooting suggestions for SMTP mail alert configuration issues (when the reachability status is **No**) that may appear in the Cisco IMC logs:

Issue	Suggested Solution
Timeout was reached	This could occur when you are not able to reach the configured SMTP IP address. Enter a valid IP address.
Couldn't resolve host name	This could occur when you are not able to reach the configured SMTP domain name. Enter a valid domain name.
Couldn't connect to server	This could occur when the SMTP IP or domain name or port number is/are incorrectly configured. Enter valid configuration details.
Failed sending data to the peer	This could occur when the an invalid recipient email ID is configured. Enter a valid email ID.

Adding SMTP Email Recipients

Add email recipients on the **Mail Alert** tab to receive email notifications for server faults.

Before you begin

- You must log in as a user with admin privileges to perform this task.
- Configure the SMTP server properties in the SMTP Properties area. See Configuring SMTP Server For Receiving Email Alerts, on page 257

Procedure

Step 1 In the Navigation pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Communication Services**.

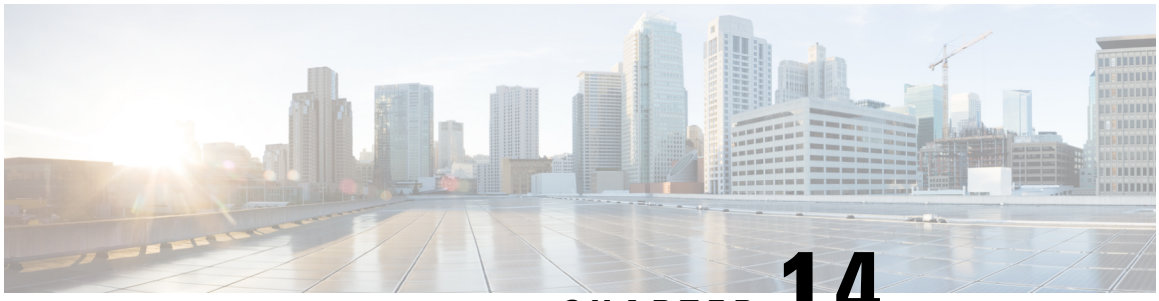
Step 3 In the **Communications Services** pane, click the **Mail Alert** tab.

Step 4 In the **SMTP Recipients** area, do the following:

a) Click the **Add (+)** button to add the email recipients to whom notifications should be sent. Enter the email ID and click **Save**.

b) Click **Send Test Mail** to check whether the email recipient you added is reachable.
If the email address and the SMTP settings are valid, a confirmation pop-up window appears with the message that an email has been sent. If the settings are not valid, a confirmation pop-up window appears with the message that no email has been sent. The **Reachability** column indicates whether test mails have been sent successfully to the email recipient. The **Reachability** column has one of the following values:

- **Yes** (if the test mail has been sent successfully)
- **No** (if the test mail has not been sent successfully)
- **na** (if no test mail has been sent)



CHAPTER 14

Managing Certificates and Server Security

This chapter includes the following sections:

Managing the Server Certificate

You can generate a certificate signing request (CSR) to obtain a new certificate, and you can upload the new certificate to the Cisco IMC to replace the current server certificate. The server certificate may be signed either by a public Certificate Authority (CA), such as Verisign, or by your own certificate authority. The generated certificate key length is 2048 bits.

Note Before performing any of the following tasks in this chapter, ensure that the Cisco IMC time is set to the current time.

Procedure

Step 1 Generate the CSR from the Cisco IMC.

Step 2 Submit the CSR file to a certificate authority that will issue and sign your certificate. If your organization generates its own self-signed certificates, you can use the CSR file to generate a self-signed certificate.

Step 3 Upload the new certificate to the Cisco IMC.

Note The uploaded certificate must be created from a CSR generated by the Cisco IMC. Do not upload a certificate that was not created by this method.

Generating a Certificate Signing Request

Note Do not use special characters (For example ampersand (**&**)) in the **Common Name** and **Organization Unit** fields.

Before you begin

- You must log in as a user with admin privileges to configure certificates.
- Ensure that the Cisco IMC time is set to the current time.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Security Management**.

Step 3 In the **Actions** area, click the **Generate New Certificate Signing Request** link.

The **Generate New Certificate Signing Request** dialog box appears.

Step 4 In the **Generate New Certificate Signing Request** dialog box, update the following properties:

Name	Description
Common Name field	The fully qualified name of the Cisco IMC. By default the CN of the servers appears in CXXX-YYYYYY format, where XXX is the model number and YYYYYY is the serial number of the server. When you upgrade to latest version, CN is retained as is.
Subject Alternate Name (SAN)	You can now provide additional input parameter for Subject Alternate Name. This allows various values to be associated using the subject field of the certificate. The various options of SAN includes: • Email • DNS name • IP address • Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) **Note** This field is optional. You can configure any number of SAN instances of each type, but all together the instances count must not exceed 10.
Organization Name field	The organization requesting the certificate.

Name	Description
Organization Unit field	The organizational unit.
Locality field	The city or town in which the company requesting the certificate is headquartered.
State Name field	The state or province in which the company requesting the certificate is headquartered.
Country Code drop-down list	The country in which the company resides.
Email field	The email contact at the company.
Signature Algorithm	Allows you to select the signature algorithm for generating certificate signing request. This can be one of the following: • SHA384 • SHA1 • SHA256 • SHA512 The default signature algorithm selected for generating certificate signing request is SHA384.
Self Signed Certificate check box	Generates a Self Signed Certificate. **Warning** After successful certificate generation, the Cisco IMC Web GUI restarts. Communication with the management controller may be lost momentarily and you will need to re-login. **Note** If enabled, CSR is generated, signed and uploaded automatically.

Note If Self-signed certificate is enabled, ignore steps 5 and 6.

Step 5 Click **Generate CSR**.

The **Opening csr.txt** dialog box appears.

Step 6 Perform any one of the following steps to manage the CSR file, csr.txt:

a) Click **Open With** to view csr.txt.
b) Click **Save File** and then click **OK** to save csr.txt to your local machine.

What to do next

- Submit the CSR file to a certificate authority that will issue and sign your certificate. If your organization generates its own self-signed certificates, you can use the CSR file to generate a self-signed certificate.
- Ensure that the certificate is of type **Server**.

Creating a Self-Signed Certificate

As an alternative to using a public Certificate Authority (CA) to generate and sign a server certificate, you can operate your own CA and sign your own certificates. This section shows commands for creating a CA and generating a server certificate using the OpenSSL certificate server running on Linux. For detailed information about OpenSSL, see http://www.openssl.org.

Note These commands are to be entered on a Linux server with the OpenSSL package, not in the Cisco IMC.

Before you begin

- Obtain and install a certificate server software package on a server within your organization.
- Ensure that the Cisco IMC time is set to the current time.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**openssl genrsa -out** *CA_keyfilename keysize* **Example:** `# openssl genrsa -out ca.key 2048`	This command generates an RSA private key that will be used by the CA. **Note** To allow the CA to access the key without user input, do not use the -des3 option for this command. The specified file name contains an RSA key of the specified key size.
Step 2	**openssl req -new -x509 -days** *numdays* **-key** *CA_keyfilename* **-out** *CA_certfilename* **Example:** `# openssl req -new -x509 -days 365 -key ca.key -out ca.crt`	This command generates a new self-signed certificate for the CA using the specified key. The certificate is valid for the specified period. The command prompts the user for additional certificate information. The certificate server is an active CA.
Step 3	**echo "nsCertType = server" > openssl.conf** **Example:** `# echo "nsCertType = server" > openssl.conf`	This command adds a line to the OpenSSL configuration file to designate the certificate as a server-only certificate. This designation is a defense against a man-in-the-middle attack, in which an authorized client attempts to impersonate the server. The OpenSSL configuration file openssl.conf contains the statement "nsCertType = server".
Step 4	**openssl x509 -req -days** *numdays* **-in** *CSR_filename* **-CA** *CA_certfilename* **-set_serial**	This command directs the CA to use your CSR file to generate a server certificate.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	04 -CAkey *CA_keyfilename* **-out** *server_certfilename* **-extfile openssl.conf** **Example:** `# openssl x509 -req -days 365 -in csr.txt -CA ca.crt -set_serial 04 -CAkey ca.key -out myserver05.crt -extfile openssl.conf`	Your server certificate is contained in the output file.
Step 5	**openssl x509 -noout -text -purpose -in <cert file>** **Example:** `openssl x509 -noout -text -purpose -in <cert file>`	Verifies if the generated certificate is of type **Server**. **Note** If the values of the fields **Server SSL** and **Netscape SSL** server are not yes, ensure that openssl.conf is configured to generate certificates of type server.
Step 6	(Optional) If the generated certificate does not have the correct validity dates, ensure the Cisco IMC time is set to the current time, and regenerate the certificate by repeating steps 1 through 5.	Certificate with the correct validity dates is created.

Example

This example shows how to create a CA and to generate a server certificate signed by the new CA. These commands are entered on a Linux server running OpenSSL.

```
# /usr/bin/openssl genrsa -out ca.key 2048
Generating RSA private key, 2048 bit long modulus
.............++++++
.....++++++
e is 65537 (0x10001)
# /usr/bin/openssl req -new -x509 -days 365 -key ca.key -out ca.crt
You are about to be asked to enter information that will be incorporated
into your certificate request.
What you are about to enter is what is called a Distinguished Name or a DN.
There are quite a few fields but you can leave some blank
For some fields there will be a default value,
If you enter '.', the field will be left blank.
-----
Country Name (2 letter code) [GB]:US
State or Province Name (full name) [Berkshire]:California
Locality Name (eg, city) [Newbury]:San Jose
Organization Name (eg, company) [My Company Ltd]:Example Incorporated
Organizational Unit Name (eg, section) []:Unit A
Common Name (eg, your name or your server's hostname) []:example.com
Email Address []:admin@example.com
# echo "nsCertType = server" > openssl.conf
# /usr/bin/openssl x509 -req -days 365 -in csr.txt -CA ca.crt -set_serial 01
-CAkey ca.key -out server.crt -extfile openssl.conf
Signature ok
subject=/C=US/ST=California/L=San Jose/O=Example Inc./OU=Unit
```

```
A/CN=example.com/emailAddress=john@example.com
Getting CA Private Key
#
```

What to do next

Upload the new certificate to the Cisco IMC.

Creating a Self-Signed Certificate Using Windows

Before you begin

- You must log in as a user with admin privileges to configure certificates.
- Ensure that the Cisco IMC time is set to the current time.

Procedure

Step 1 Open **IIS Manager** and navigate to the level you want to manage.

Step 2 In the **Features** area, double-click **Server Certificate**.

Step 3 In the **Action** pane, click **Create Self-Signed Certificate**.

Step 4 On the **Create Self-Signed Certificate** window, enter name for the certificate in the **Specify a friendly name for the certificate** field.

Step 5 Click **Ok**.

Step 6 (Optional) If the generated certificate does not have the correct validity dates, ensure the Cisco IMC time is set to the current time, and regenerate the certificate by repeating steps 1 through 5.
Certificate with the correct validity dates is created.

Uploading a Server Certificate

You can either browse and select the certificate to be uploaded to the server or copy the entire content of the signed certificate and paste it in the **Paste certificate content** text field and upload it.

Before you begin

- You must log in as a user with admin privileges to upload a certificate.
- The certificate file to be uploaded must reside on a locally accessible file system.
- Ensure that the generated certificate is of type server.
- The following certificate formats are supported:
  - .crt
  - .cer

- .pem

Note You must first generate a CSR using the Cisco IMC Certificate Management menu, and you must use that CSR to obtain the certificate for uploading. Do not upload a certificate that was not obtained by this method.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Certificate Management**.

Step 3 In the **Actions** area, click **Upload Server Certificate**.

The **Upload Certificate** dialog box appears.

Step 4 In the **Upload Certificate** dialog box, update the following properties:

Name	Description
File field	The certificate file you want to upload.
Browse button	Opens a dialog box that allows you to navigate to the appropriate certificate file.
Paste Certificate content radio button	Opens a dialog box that allows you to copy the entire content of the signed certificate and paste it in the **Paste certificate content** text field. **Note** Ensure the certificate is signed before uploading.
Upload Certificate button	Allows you to upload the certificate.

Step 5 Click **Upload Certificate**.

Key Management Interoperability Protocol

Key Management Interoperability Protocol (KMIP) is a communication protocol that defines message formats to handle keys or classified data on a key management server. KMIP is an open standard and is supported by several vendors. Key management involves multiple interoperable implementations, so a KMIP client works effectively with any KMIP server.

Self-Encrypting Drives(SEDs) contain hardware that encrypts incoming data and decrypts outgoing data in realtime. A drive or media encryption key controls this function. However, the drives need to be locked in order to maintain security. A security key identifier and a security key (key encryption key) help achieve this goal. The key identifier provides a unique ID to the drive.

Different keys have different usage requirements. Currently, the responsibility of managing and tracking local keys lies primarily with the user, which could result in human error. The user needs to remember the different

keys and their functions, which could prove to be a challenge. KMIP addresses this area of concern to manage the keys effectively without human involvement.

Viewing Secure Key Management Settings

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Security Management**.

Step 3 In the **Security Management** pane, click **Secure Key Management**.

Step 4 In the **Work** pane, review the following field:

Name	Description
Enable Secure Key Management check box	If checked, allows you to enable the secure key management feature.

Step 5 In the **Actions** Area, review the following fields:

Name	Description
Download Root CA Certificate link	This allows you to download the root CA certificate to Cisco IMC.
Export Root CA Certificate link	This allows you to export the downloaded root CA certificate to a local file or remote server.
Delete Root CA Certificate link	This allows you to delete the root CA certificate.
Download Client Certificate link	This allows you to download the client certificate to Cisco IMC.
Export Client Certificate link	This allows you to export the downloaded client certificate to a local file or remote server.
Delete Client Certificate link	This allows you to delete the client certificate.
Download Client Private Key link	This allows you to download the client private key to Cisco IMC.
Export Client Private Key link	This allows you to export the downloaded root CA certificate to local file or remote server.
Delete Client Private Key link	This allows you to delete the root CA certificate.
Delete KMIP Login link	This allows you to delete the KMIP login details.

Step 6 In the **KMIP Servers** Area, review the following fields:

Name	Description
ID field	ID for the KMIP server configuration.
IP Address field	IP address of the KMIP server.
Port field	Communication port to the KMIP server.
Timeout field	Time period that Cisco IMC waits for a response from the KMIP server.
Delete button	Deletes the KMIP server configuration.
Test Connection button	Tests whether or not the KMIP connection was successful.

Step 7 In the **KMIP Root CA Certificate** Area, review the following fields:

Name	Description
Server Root CA Certificate field	Indicates the availability of the root CA certificate.
Download Status field	This field displays the status of the root CA certificate download.
Download Progress field	This field displays the progress of the root CA certificate download.
Export Status field	This field displays the status of the root CA certificate export.
Export Progress field	This field displays the progress of the root CA certificate export.

Step 8 In the **KMIP Client Certificate** Area, review the following fields:

Name	Description
Client Certificate field	Indicates the availability of the client certificate.
Download Status field	This field displays the status of the client certificate download.
Download Progress field	This field displays the progress of the client certificate download.
Export Status field	This field displays the status of the client certificate export.
Export Progress field	This field displays the progress of the client certificate export.

Step 9 In the **KMIP Login Details** Area, review the following fields:

Name	Description
Use KMIP Login check box	Allows you to choose whether or not to use KMIP login details.
Login name to KMIP Server field	User name of the KMIP server.
Password to KMIP Server field	Password of the KMIP server.
Change Password check box	Allows you to change the KMIP password.
New Password field	Allows you to enter the new password that you want to assign to the KMIP server. **Note** This option is only visible when you enable the **Change Password** check box.
Confirm Password field	Enter the new password again in this field. **Note** This option is only visible when you enable the **Change Password** check box.

Step 10 In the **KMIP Client Private Key** Area, review the following fields:

Name	Description
Client Private Key field	Indicates the availability of the client private key.
Download Status field	This field displays the status of the client private key download.
Download Progress field	This field displays the progress of the client private key download.
Export Status field	This field displays the status of the client private key export.
Export Progress field	This field displays the progress of the client private key export.

Creating a Client Private Key and Client Certificate for KMIP Configuration

As an alternative to using a public Certificate Authority (CA) to generate and sign a server certificate, you can operate your own CA and sign your own certificates. This section shows commands for creating a CA and generating a server certificate using the OpenSSL certificate server running on Linux. For detailed information about OpenSSL, see http://www.openssl.org.

Note These commands are to be entered on a Linux server with the OpenSSL package, not in the Cisco IMC.

Before you begin

- Obtain and install a certificate server software package on a server within your organization.
- Ensure that the Cisco IMC time is set to the current time.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**openssl genrsa -out** *Client_Privatekeyfilename keysize* **Example:** `# openssl genrsa –out client_private.pem 2048`	This command generates a client private key that will be used to generate the client certificate. The specified file name contains an RSA key of the specified key size.
Step 2	**openssl req -new -x509 -days** *numdays* **-key** *Client_Privatekeyfilename* **-out** *Client_certfilename* **Example:** `# openssl req -new -x509 -key client_private.pem -out client.pem -days 365`	This command generates a new self-signed client certificate using the client private key obtained from the previous step. The certificate is valid for the specified period. The command prompts the user for additional certificate information. A new self-signed client certificate is created.
Step 3	Obtain the KMIP root CA certificate from the KMIP server.	Refer to the KMIP vendor documentation for details on obtaining the root CA certificate.

What to do next

Upload the new certificate to the Cisco IMC.

Downloading a Client Certificate

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.
Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Security Management**.
Step 3 In the **Security Management** pane, click **Secure Key Management**.
Step 4 In the **Actions** area of the **Secure Key Management** tab, click **Download Client Certificate**.
Step 5 In the **Download Client Certificate** dialog box, complete these fields:

Name	Description
Download From Remote Location radio button	Selecting this option allows you to choose the certificate from a remote location and download it. Enter the following details: • • **TFTP Server** • **FTP Server** • **SFTP Server** • **SCP Server** • **HTTP Server** **Note** If you chose SCP or SFTP as the remote server type while performing this action, a pop-up window is displayed with the message *Server (RSA) key fingerprint is <server_finger_print _ID> Do you wish to continue?*. Click Yes or No depending on the authenticity of the server fingerprint. The fingerprint is based on the host's public key and helps you to identify or verify the host you are connecting to. • **Server IP/Hostname** field — The IP address or hostname of the server on which the client certificate file should be stored. Depending on the setting in the **Download Certificate from** drop-down list, the name of the field may vary. • **Path and Filename** field — The path and filename Cisco IMC should use when downloading the file to the remote server. • **Username** field — The username the system should use to log in to the remote server. This field does not apply if the protocol is TFTP or HTTP. • **Password** field — The password for the remote server username. This field does not apply if the protocol is TFTP or HTTP.
Download Through Browser Client radio button	Selecting this option allows you to navigate to the certificate stored on a drive that is local to the computer running the Cisco IMC GUI. When you select this option, Cisco IMC GUI displays a **Browse** button that lets you navigate to the file you want to import.
Paste Content radio button	Selecting this option allows you to copy the entire content of the signed certificate and paste it in the **Paste Certificate Content** text field. **Note** Ensure the certificate is signed before uploading.

Exporting a Client Certificate

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Security Management**.

Step 3 In the **Security Management** pane, click **Secure Key Management**.

Step 4 In the **Actions** area of the **Secure Key Management** tab, click **Export Client Certificate**.

Step 5 In the **Export Client Certificate** dialog box, complete these fields:

Name	Description
Export to Remote Location	Selecting this option allows you to choose the certificate from a remote location and export it. Enter the following details: • • **TFTP Server** • **FTP Server** • **SFTP Server** • **SCP Server** • **HTTP Server** **Note** If you chose SCP or SFTP as the remote server type while performing this action, a pop-up window is displayed with the message *Server (RSA) key fingerprint is <server_finger_print _ID> Do you wish to continue?*. Click Yes or No depending on the authenticity of the server fingerprint. The fingerprint is based on the host's public key and helps you to identify or verify the host you are connecting to. • **Server IP/Hostname** field — The IP address or hostname of the server on which the certificate file should be exported. Depending on the setting in the **Download Certificate from** drop-down list, the name of the field may vary. • **Path and Filename** field — The path and filename Cisco IMC should use when downloading the certificate from the remote server. • **Username** field — The username the system should use to log in to the remote server. This field does not apply if the protocol is TFTP or HTTP. • **Password** field — The password for the remote server username. This field does not apply if the protocol is TFTP or HTTP.

Name	Description
Export to Local File	Selecting this option allows you to choose the certificate stored on a drive that is local to the computer and export it.

Deleting a Client Certificate

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.
Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Security Management**.
Step 3 In the **Security Management** pane, click **Secure Key Management**.
Step 4 In the **Actions** area of the **Secure Key Management** tab, click **Delete Client Certificate**.
Step 5 At the prompt, click **OK** to delete the client certificate, or **Cancel** to cancel the action.

Downloading a Root CA Certificate

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.
Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Security Management**.
Step 3 In the **Security Management** pane, click **Secure Key Management**.
Step 4 In the **Actions** area of the **Secure Key Management** tab, click **Download Root CA Certificate**.
Step 5 In the **Download Root CA Certificate** dialog box, complete these fields:

Name	Description
Download From Remote Location radio button	Selecting this option allows you to choose the certificate from a remote location and download it. Enter the following details: • • **TFTP Server** • **FTP Server** • **SFTP Server** • **SCP Server** • **HTTP Server** **Note** If you chose SCP or SFTP as the remote server type while performing this action, a pop-up window is displayed with the message *Server (RSA) key fingerprint is <server_finger_print _ID> Do you wish to continue?*. Click Yes or No depending on the authenticity of the server fingerprint. The fingerprint is based on the host's public key and helps you to identify or verify the host you are connecting to. • **Server IP/Hostname** field — The IP address or hostname of the server on which the root CA certificate file should be stored. Depending on the setting in the **Download Certificate from** drop-down list, the name of the field may vary. • **Path and Filename** field — The path and filename Cisco IMC should use when downloading the file to the remote server. • **Username** field — The username the system should use to log in to the remote server. This field does not apply if the protocol is TFTP or HTTP. • **Password** field — The password for the remote server username. This field does not apply if the protocol is TFTP or HTTP.
Download Through Browser Client radio button	Selecting this option allows you to navigate to the certificate stored on a drive that is local to the computer running the Cisco IMC GUI. When you select this option, Cisco IMC GUI displays a **Browse** button that lets you navigate to the file you want to import.
Paste Content radio button	Selecting this option allows you to copy the entire content of the signed certificate and paste it in the **Paste Certificate Content** text field. **Note** Ensure the certificate is signed before uploading.

Exporting a Root CA Certificate

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Security Management**.

Step 3 In the **Security Management** pane, click **Secure Key Management**.

Step 4 In the **Actions** area of the **Secure Key Management** tab, click **Export Root CA Certificate**.

Step 5 In the **Export Root CA Certificate** dialog box, complete these fields:

Name	Description
Export to Remote Location	Selecting this option allows you to choose the certificate from a remote location and export it. Enter the following details: • • **TFTP Server** • **FTP Server** • **SFTP Server** • **SCP Server** • **HTTP Server** **Note** If you chose SCP or SFTP as the remote server type while performing this action, a pop-up window is displayed with the message *Server (RSA) key fingerprint is <server_finger_print _ID> Do you wish to continue?*. Click Yes or No depending on the authenticity of the server fingerprint. The fingerprint is based on the host's public key and helps you to identify or verify the host you are connecting to. • **Server IP/Hostname** field — The IP address or hostname of the server on which the certificate file should be exported. Depending on the setting in the **Download Certificate from** drop-down list, the name of the field may vary. • **Path and Filename** field — The path and filename Cisco IMC should use when downloading the certificate from the remote server. • **Username** field — The username the system should use to log in to the remote server. This field does not apply if the protocol is TFTP or HTTP. • **Password** field — The password for the remote server username. This field does not apply if the protocol is TFTP or HTTP.

Name	Description
Export to Local File	Selecting this option allows you to choose the certificate stored on a drive that is local to the computer and export it.

Deleting a Root CA Certificate

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.
Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Security Management**.
Step 3 In the **Security Management** pane, click **Secure Key Management**.
Step 4 In the **Actions** area of the **Secure Key Management** tab, click **Delete Root CA Certificate**.
Step 5 At the prompt, click **OK** or **Cancel** to delete the root CA certificate, or cancel the action.

Downloading a Client Private Key

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.
Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Security Management**.
Step 3 In the **Security Management** pane, click **Secure Key Management**.
Step 4 In the **Actions** area of the **Secure Key Management** tab, click **Download Client Private Key**.
Step 5 In the **Download Client Private Key** dialog box, complete these fields:

Name	Description
Download From Remote Location radio button	Selecting this option allows you to choose the private key from a remote location and download it. Enter the following details: • • **TFTP Server** • **FTP Server** • **SFTP Server** • **SCP Server** • **HTTP Server** **Note** If you chose SCP or SFTP as the remote server type while performing this action, a pop-up window is displayed with the message *Server (RSA) key fingerprint is <server_finger_print _ID> Do you wish to continue?*. Click Yes or No depending on the authenticity of the server fingerprint. The fingerprint is based on the host's public key and helps you to identify or verify the host you are connecting to. • **Server IP/Hostname** field — The IP address or hostname of the server on which the client private key should be stored. Depending on the setting in the **Download Certificate From** drop-down list, the name of the field may vary. • **Path and Filename** field — The path and filename Cisco IMC should use when downloading the file to the remote server. • **Username** field — The username the system should use to log in to the remote server. This field does not apply if the protocol is TFTP or HTTP. • **Password** field — The password for the remote server username. This field does not apply if the protocol is TFTP or HTTP.
Download Through Browser Client radio button	Selecting this option allows you to navigate to the private key stored on a drive that is local to the computer running the Cisco IMC GUI. When you select this option, Cisco IMC GUI displays a **Browse** button that lets you navigate to the file you want to import.
Paste Content radio button	Selecting this option allows you to copy the entire content of the signed private key and paste it in the **Paste Private Key Content** text field.

What to do next

Exporting a Client Private Key

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Security Management**.

Step 3 In the **Security Management** pane, click **Secure Key Management**.

Step 4 In the **Actions** area of the **Secure Key Management** tab, click **Export Client Private Key**.

Step 5 In the **Export Client Private Key** dialog box, complete these fields:

Name	Description
Export to Remote Location	Selecting this option allows you to choose the certificate from a remote location and export it. Enter the following details: • • **TFTP Server** • **FTP Server** • **SFTP Server** • **SCP Server** • **HTTP Server** **Note** If you chose SCP or SFTP as the remote server type while performing this action, a pop-up window is displayed with the message *Server (RSA) key fingerprint is <server_finger_print _ID> Do you wish to continue?*. Click Yes or No depending on the authenticity of the server fingerprint. The fingerprint is based on the host's public key and helps you to identify or verify the host you are connecting to. • **Server IP/Hostname** field — The IP address or hostname of the server on which the certificate file should be exported. Depending on the setting in the **Download Certificate from** drop-down list, the name of the field may vary. • **Path and Filename** field — The path and filename Cisco IMC should use when downloading the certificate from the remote server. • **Username** field — The username the system should use to log in to the remote server. This field does not apply if the protocol is TFTP or HTTP. • **Password** field — The password for the remote server username. This field does not apply if the protocol is TFTP or HTTP.

Name	Description
Export to Local File	Selecting this option allows you to choose the certificate stored on a drive that is local to the computer and export it.

Deleting a Client Private Key

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.
Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Security Management**.
Step 3 In the **Security Management** pane, click **Secure Key Management**.
Step 4 In the **Actions** area of the **Secure Key Management** pane, click **Delete Client Private Key**.
Step 5 At the prompt, click **OK** or **Cancel** to delete the client private key, or cancel the action.

Testing the KMIP Server Connection

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.
Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Security Management**.
Step 3 In the **Security Management** pane, click **Secure Key Management**.
Step 4 In the **KMIP Servers** area of the **Secure Key Management** tab, select a row by checking the check box and click **Test Connection**.
Step 5 If the connection is successful, a success message is displayed.

Restoring the KMIP Server to Default Settings

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.
Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Security Management**.
Step 3 In the **Security Management** pane, click **Secure Key Management**.
Step 4 In the **KMIP Servers** area of the **Secure Key Management** tab, select a row by checking the check box and click **Delete**.

Step 5 At the prompt, click **OK**

This restores the KMIP server to its default settings.

Deleting KMIP Login Details

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Security Management**.

Step 3 In the **Security Management** pane, click **Secure Key Management**.

Step 4 In the **Actions** area of the **Secure Key Management** pane, click **Delete KMIP Login**.

Step 5 At the prompt, click **OK** to delete the KMIP login details, or **Cancel** to cancel the action.

FIPS 140-2 Compliance in Cisco IMC

The Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS) Publication 140-2, (FIPS PUB 140-2), is a U.S. government computer security standard used to approve cryptographic modules. Prior to the 3.1(3) release, the Rack Cisco IMC is not FIPS compliant as per NIST guideline. It does not follow FIPS 140-2 approved cryptographic algorithms and modules. With this release, all CIMC services will use the Cisco FIPS Object Module (FOM), which provides the FIPS 140-2 compliant cryptographic module.

The Cisco FIPS Object Module is a software library that provides cryptographic services to a vast array of Cisco's networking and collaboration products. The module provides FIPS 140 validated cryptographic algorithms and KDF functionality for services such as IPSec (IKE), SRTP, SSH, TLS, and SNMP.

Enabling Security Configuration (FIPS)

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Security Management**.

Step 3 In the **Security Management** pane, click **Security Configuration**.

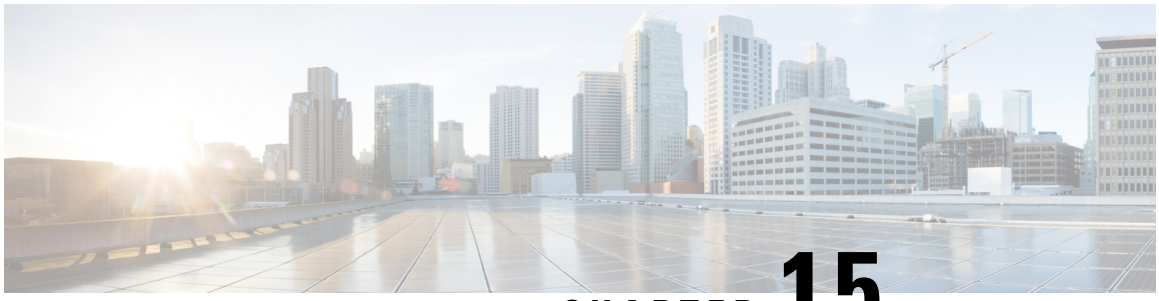
Step 4 In the **Work** pane, check the **Enable FIPS** check-box.

Note When you switch the FIPS mode, it restarts the SSH, KVM, SNMP, webserver, XMLAPI, and redfish services.

Step 5 You will be prompted to continue. If you wish to continue, click **OK** else click on **Cancel**.
This enables FIPS.

Note When you enable FIPS, the following is an impact on the SNMP configuration:

- The community string configuration for the SNMPv2 protocols, and the SNMPv3 users configured with **noAuthNoPriv** or **authNoPriv** security-level option are disabled.
- The traps configured for SNMPv2 or SNMPv3 users with the **noAuthNoPriv** security-level option are disabled.
- The **MD5** and **DES** Authentication type and Privacy type are disabled.
- It also ensures only FIPS-compliant ciphers in SSH, webserver, and KVM connections.



CHAPTER 15

Managing Firmware

This chapter includes the following sections:

Firmware Management Overview

You can manage the following firmware components from a single page in the web UI:

- Adapter firmware —The main operating firmware, consisting of an active and a backup image, can be installed from different interfaces such as:
  - Host Upgrade Utility (HUU)
  - Web UI — Local and remote protocols
  - PMCLI —Remote protocols
  - XML API — Remote protocols

  You can upload a firmware image from either a local file system or a TFTP server.
- Bootloader firmware—The bootloader firmware cannot be installed from the Cisco IMC. You can install this firmware using the Host Upgrade Utility.

Firmware for the following individual components can be updated:

- BMC
- BIOS
- CMC
- SAS Expander
- Adapter

Firmware for the Hard Disk Drive (HDD) can also be installed from the same interfaces as the adapter firmware mentioned above.

Viewing Firmware Components

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Admin** menu, click **Firmware Management**.

Step 2 In the **General** tab's **Firmware Management** area, review the following information:

Name	Description
Update button	Opens a dialog box that allows you to install a firmware image file that is available to your local machine or on a remote server.
Activate button	Opens a dialog box that allows you to select which available firmware version you would like to activate on the server. **Important** If any firmware or BIOS updates are in progress, do not activate new firmware until those tasks complete.
Component column	List of components available for which you can update the firmware.
Running Version column	The firmware version of the component that is currently active.
Backup Version column	The alternate firmware version installed on the server, if any. The backup version is not currently running. To activate it, click **Activate**. **Note** When you install new firmware, any existing backup version is deleted and the new firmware becomes the backup version. You must manually activate the new firmware if you want the server to run the new version.
Bootloader Version column	The bootloader version associated with the boot-loader software of the component.
Status column	The status of the firmware activation on this server.
Progress in % column	The progress of the operation, in percentage.

Updating the Firmware

You can install the firmware package from a local disk or from a remote server, depending on the component you choose from the **Firmware Management** area. After you confirm the installation, BMC replaces the firmware version in the component's backup memory slot with the selected version.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Admin** menu, click **Firmware Management**.

Step 2 In the **Firmware Management** area, select a component from the **Component** column and click **Update**.

The **Update Firmware** dialog box appears.

Step 3 Review the following information in the dialog box:

Name	Description
Install Firmware through Browser Client radio button	If the firmware package resides on a local machine, click this radio button.
Install Firmware through Remote Server radio button	If the firmware package resides on a remote server, click this radio button.

Step 4 To install the firmware through the browser client, click **Browse** and navigate to the firmware file that you want to install.

Step 5 After you select the file, click **Install Firmware**.

Step 6 To update the firmware using remote server, select the remote server type from the **Install Firmware from** drop-down list. This could be one of the following:

- **TFTP**
- **FTP**
- **SFTP**
- **SCP**
- **HTTP**

Step 7 Depending on the remote server type you choose, enter details in the server's **IP/Hostname** and **Image Path and Filename** fields.

Once you install the firmware, the new image replaces the non-active image. You can activate the image after it is installed.

Important For FTP, SFTP, and SCP server types, you need to provide user credentials.

Step 8 Click **Install Firmware** to begin download and installation.

Activating the Firmware

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Admin** menu, click **Firmware Management**.

Step 2 In the **Firmware Management** area, select a component from the **Component** column and click **Activate**.

The **Activate Firmware** dialog box appears.

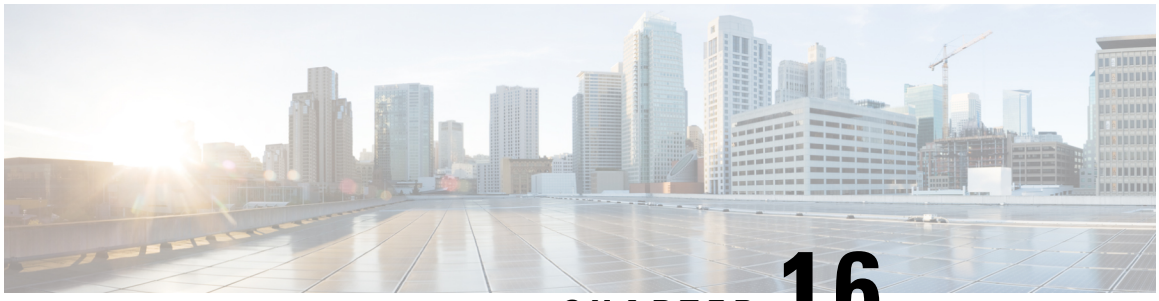
Step 3 In the **Activate Firmware** dialog box, select the desired firmware image (radio button) to activate. This image becomes the running version.

Step 4 Click **Activate Firmware**.

Depending on the firmware image you chose, the activation process begins.

Important While the activation is in progress, do not:

- Reset, power off, or shut down the server
- Reboot or reset BMC
- Activate any other firmware
- Export technical support or configuration data



CHAPTER 16

Viewing Faults and Logs

This chapter includes the following sections:

Faults Summary

Viewing the Fault Summary

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Faults and Logs**.

Step 3 In the **Faults Summary** tab, review the following information:

Table 8: Actions Area

Name	Description
Total	Displays the total number of rows in the Fault Entries table.
Column drop-down list	Allows you to choose the columns you wish to be displayed.

Name	Description
Show drop-down list	Customize the way you want to view fault entries using filters. These can be: • **Quick Filter** - Default view. • **Advanced Filter** - Filter options to display the fault entries based on one or more criteria. Using the matching rule, you can view entries matching all the rules or any one combination of rules you specified in the **Filter** fields. Click **Go** to view the entries matching the filter criteria that you set. Click the **Save** icon to save the filter criteria that you set. This becomes a user-defined filter which you can use later. **Note** The user-defined filter appears in the **Manage Preset Filters** dialog box. • **All** - Displays all entries • **Manage Preset Filters** - Displays user-defined filters. You can edit or remove the user-defined filter from this dialog box. • **List of pre-defined filters** - Displays the system-defined filters. **Note** You can use the **Filter** icon to hide or unhide the filter fields.

Table 9: Fault Entries Area

Name	Description
Time	The time when the fault occurred.
Severity	This can be one of the following: • **Cleared** - A fault or condition was cleared. • **Critical** • **Info** • **Major** • **Minor** • **Warning**
Code	The unique identifier assigned to the fault.

Name	Description
DN	The distinguished name (DN) is a hierarchical representation of the device endpoint and its instance on the server.
Probable Cause	The unique identifier associated with the event that caused the fault.
Description	More information about the fault. It also includes a proposed solution.

Fault History

Viewing Faults History

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Faults and Logs**.

Step 3 In the **Faults History** tab, review the following information

Table 10: Actions Area

Name	Description
Total	Displays the total number of rows in the Fault History table.
Column drop-down list	Allows you to choose the columns you wish to be displayed.

Name	Description
Show drop-down list	Customize the way you want to view fault history entries using filters. These can be: • **Quick Filter** - Default view. • **Advanced Filter** - Filter options to display the entries based on one or more criteria. Using the matching rule, you can view entries matching all the rules or any one combination of rules you specified in the **Filter** fields. Click **Go** to view the entries matching the filter criteria that you set. Click the **Save** icon to save the filter criteria that you set. This becomes a user-defined filter which you can use later. **Note** The user-defined filter appears in the **Manage Preset Filters** dialog box. • **All** - Displays all entries • **Manage Preset Filters** - Displays user-defined filters. You can edit or remove the user-defined filter from this dialog box. • **List of pre-defined filters** - Displays the system-defined filters. **Note** You can use the **Filter** icon to hide or unhide the filter fields.

Table 11: Faults History Area

Name	Description
Time	The time when the fault occurred.

Name	Description
Severity	This can be one of the following: • **Emergency** • **Alert** • **Critical** • **Error** • **Warning** • **Notice** • **Informational** • **Debug**
Source	The software module that logged the event.
Probable Cause	The unique identifier associated with the event that caused the fault.
Description	More information about the fault. It also includes a proposed solution.

What to do next

Cisco IMC Log

Viewing the Cisco IMC Log

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Faults and Logs**.

Step 3 In the **Cisco IMC Log** tab, review the following information:

Table 12: Actions Area

Name	Description
Clear Log button	Clears all log files. **Note** This option is only available if your user ID is assigned the **admin** or **user** user role.

Name	Description
Total	Displays the total number of rows in the Cisco IMC Log table.
Column drop-down list	Allows you to choose the columns you wish to be displayed.
Show drop-down list	Customize the way you want to view Cisco IMC log entries using filters. These can be: • **Quick Filter** - Default view. • **Advanced Filter** - Filter options to display the log entries based on one or more criteria. Using the matching rule, you can view entries matching all the rules or any one combination of rules you specified in the **Filter** fields. Click **Go** to view the entries matching the filter criteria that you set. Click the **Save** icon to save the filter criteria that you set. This becomes a user-defined filter which you can use later. **Note** The user-defined filter appears in the **Manage Preset Filters** dialog box. • **All** - Displays all entries • **Manage Preset Filters** - Displays user-defined filters. You can edit or remove the user-defined filter from this dialog box. • **List of pre-defined filters** - Displays the system-defined filters. **Note** You can use the **Filter** icon to hide or unhide the filter fields.

Table 13: Cisco IMC Log Table

Name	Description
Time column	The date and time the event occurred.

Name	Description
Severity column	The event severity. This can be one of the following: • **Emergency** • **Alert** • **Critical** • **Error** • **Warning** • **Notice** • **Informational** • **Debug**
Source column	The software module that logged the event.
Description column	A description of the event.

System Event Log

Viewing System Event Logs

The System Event Log tab displays only the recent 3008 system events, as against the total capacity of 131068 entries in the Cisco System Event Log (Cisco SEL) stored internally. When the Cisco SEL reaches its full capacity (131068 records), the oldest entries are overwritten with the most recent entries.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Faults and Logs**.

Step 3 On the **System Event Log** tab, review the following information:

Table 14: Actions Area

Name	Description
SEL Fullness Indicator	Displays, in percentage, the used space in the System Event Log tab. The percentage is calculated with 3008 entries as the reference (the System Event Log tab always displays only the most recent 3008 system events). For example, if there are 1504 entries in the System Event Log tab, then the percentage is shown as 50. After the first set of 3008 entries are reached, the status is always displayed as 100% until the SEL is cleared.
Clear Log button	Clears all events from the log file. **Note** This option is only available if your user ID is assigned the **admin** or **user** user role.
Chassis drop-down list	Select a chassis or a server to view its logs.
Total	Displays the total number of rows in the System Event Log table.
Column drop-down list	Allows you to choose the columns you wish to be displayed.

Name	Description
Show drop-down list	Customize the way you want to view events using filters. These can be: • **Quick Filter** - Default view. • **Advanced Filter** - Filter options to display the events based on one or more criteria. Using the matching rule, you can view entries matching all the rules or any one combination of rules you specified in the **Filter** fields. Click **Go** to view the entries matching the filter criteria that you set. Click the **Save** icon to save the filter criteria that you set. This becomes a user-defined filter which you can use later. **Note** The user-defined filter appears in the **Manage Preset Filters** dialog box. • **All** - Displays all entries • **Manage Preset Filters** - Displays user-defined filters. You can edit or remove the user-defined filter from this dialog box. • **List of pre-defined filters** - Displays the system-defined filters. **Note** You can use the **Filter** icon to hide or unhide the filter fields.

Table 15: System Event Log Table

Name	Description
Time column	The date and time the event occurred.
Severity column	The severity field includes both text and a color-coded icon. For the icon, green indicates normal operation, yellow is informational, and warning, critical, and non-recoverable errors are shown in shades of red.
Description column	A description of the event.

Logging Controls

Viewing Logging Controls

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Faults and Logs**.

Step 3 In the **Logging Controls** tab, review the following information:

Remote Logging

Name	Description
Enabled check box	If checked, the Cisco IMC sends log messages to the Syslog server named in the **IP Address** field.
Host Name/IP Address field	The address of the Syslog server on which the Cisco IMC log should be stored. You can set an IPv4 or IPv6 address or a domain name as the remote system address.
Port field	Enter a destination port number of the Syslog server within the range 1 to 65535. The default port number is 514.
Protocol field	The transport layer protocol for transmission of syslog messages. You can select one of the following: • TCP • UDP
Minimum Severity to Report field	Specify the lowest level of messages that will be included in the remote logs. You can select one of the following: • **Emergency** • **Alert** • **Critical** • **Error** • **Warning** • **Notice** • **Informational** • **Debug**

Note The Cisco IMC does not remotely log any messages with a severity below the selected severity. For example, if you select **Error**, then the Cisco IMC remote log contains all messages with the severity **Emergency**, **Alert**, **Critical**, or **Error**. It does not show **Warning**, **Notice**, **Informational**, or **Debug** messages.

Local Logging

This area displays only the **Minimum Severity to Report** drop-down list as shown in the table above. You can specify the lowest level of messages to be included in the local log

Sending the Cisco IMC Log to a Remote Server

You can configure profiles for one or two remote syslog servers to receive Cisco IMC log entries.

Before you begin

- The remote syslog server must be configured to receive logs from a remote host.
- The remote syslog server must be configured to receive all types of logs, including authentication-related logs.
- The remote syslog server's firewall must be configured to allow syslog messages to reach the syslog server.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Faults and Logs**.

Step 3 In either of the **Remote Syslog Server** areas, complete the following fields:

Name	Description
Enabled check box	If checked, the Cisco IMC sends log messages to the Syslog server named in the **IP Address** field.
Host Name/IP Address field	The address of the Syslog server on which the Cisco IMC log should be stored. You can set an IPv4 or IPv6 address or a domain name as the remote system address.
Port field	Enter a destination port number of the Syslog server within the range 1 to 65535. The default port number is 514.

Step 4 (Optional) In the **Minimum Severity to Report** drop-down list, specify the lowest level of messages that will be included in the remote logs.

You can select one of the following, in decreasing order of severity:

- **Emergency**
- **Alert**

- **Critical**
- **Error**
- **Warning**
- **Notice**
- **Informational**
- **Debug**

Note Cisco IMC does not remotely log any messages with a severity below the selected severity. For example, if you select **Error**, then the Cisco IMC remote log will contain all messages with the severity Emergency, Alert, Critical, or Error. It will not show Warning, Notice, Informational, or Debug messages.

Step 5 Click **Save Changes**.

Configuring the Cisco IMC Log Threshold

Before you begin

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Faults and Logs**.

Step 3 Required: In the **Local Logging** area, use the **Minimum Severity to Report** drop-down list to specify the lowest level of messages that will be included in the Cisco IMC log.

You can select one of the following, in decreasing order of severity:

- **Emergency**
- **Alert**
- **Critical**
- **Error**
- **Warning**
- **Notice**
- **Informational**
- **Debug**

Note Cisco IMC does not log any messages with a severity below the selected severity. For example, if you select **Error**, then the Cisco IMC log will contain all messages with the severity Emergency, Alert, Critical, or Error. It will not show Warning, Notice, Informational, or Debug messages.

Sending a Test Cisco IMC Log to a Remote Server

Before you begin

- The remote syslog server must be configured to receive logs from a remote host.
- The remote syslog server must be configured to receive all types of logs, including authentication-related logs.
- The remote syslog server's firewall must be configured to allow syslog messages to reach the syslog server.

Procedure

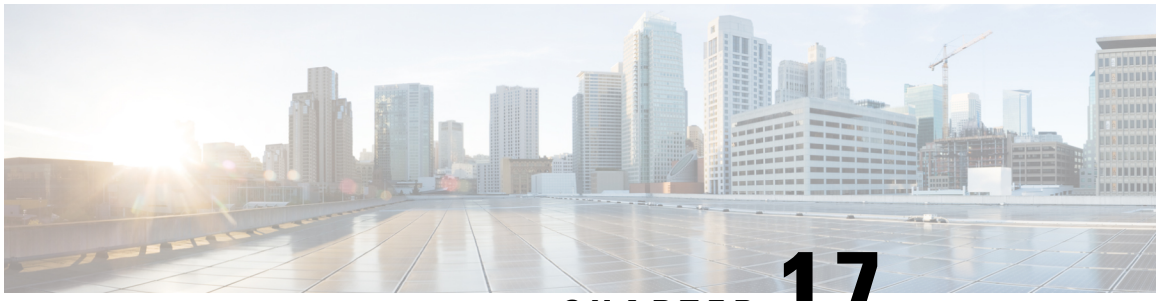
Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Chassis** menu.

Step 2 In the **Chassis** menu, click **Faults and Logs**.

Step 3 In the **Faults and Logs** pane, click the **Logging Controls** tab.

Step 4 In the **Action** area, click **Send Test Syslog**.

A test Cisco IMC log is sent to the configured remote servers.



CHAPTER 17

Server Utilities

This chapter includes the following sections:

Exporting Technical Support Data

Exporting Technical Support Data

Perform this task when requested by the Cisco Technical Assistance Center (TAC). This utility creates a summary report containing configuration information, logs and diagnostic data that will help TAC in troubleshooting and resolving a technical issue.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Utilities**.

Step 3 In the **Actions** area of the **Utilities** pane, click **Export Technical Support Data**.

Step 4 In the **Export Technical Support Data** dialog box, complete the following fields:

Name	Description

Export Technical Support Data through drop-down list	**Note** **Front Panel USB** option is visible only if **Smart Access USB** is enabled and a USB storage device is connected to the server.
	
	You can export the technical support data to a remote server or to a USB storage device connected to a server. You can choose one of the following:
	• **Remote**— This allows you to export the technical support data to a remote server using one of the following protocols:
	  • **TFTP**
	  • **FTP**
	  • **SFTP**
	  • **SCP**
	  • **HTTP**
	  Note If you chose SCP or SFTP as the remote server type while performing this action, a pop-up window is displayed with the message *Server (RSA) key fingerprint is <server_finger_print _ID> Do you wish to continue?*. Click Yes or No depending on the authenticity of the server fingerprint.
	  The fingerprint is based on the host's public key and helps you to identify or verify the host you are connecting to.
	• **Front Panel USB**—This allows you to export the technical support data to a USB storage device connected to the server.

Server IP/Hostname field	The IP address or hostname of the server on which the support data file should be stored. Depending on the setting in the **Export Technical Support Data to** drop-down list, the name of the field may vary.
Path and Filename field	The path and filename Cisco IMC should use when exporting the file to the remote server. **Note** If the server includes any of the supported network adapter cards, the data file also includes technical support data from the adapter card.
Username	The username the system should use to log in to the remote server. This field does not apply if the protocol is TFTP or HTTP.
Password	The password for the remote server username. This field does not apply if the protocol is TFTP or HTTP.

Step 5 Click **Export**.

What to do next

Provide the generated report file to Cisco TAC.

Downloading Technical Support Data to a Local File

Perform this task when requested by the Cisco Technical Assistance Center (TAC). This utility creates a summary report containing configuration information, logs and diagnostic data that will help TAC in troubleshooting and resolving a technical issue.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Utilities**.

Step 3 In the **Actions** area of the **Utilities** pane, click **Generate Technical Support Data for Local Download**.

Step 4 In the **Download Technical Support Data to Local File** dialog box, complete the following fields:

Name	Description
Generate Technical Support Data radio button	Cisco IMC disables this radio button when there is no technical support data file to download. Click **Generate** to create the data file. When data collection is complete, click **Download Technical Support Data to Local File** in the **Actions** area to download the file.
Regenerate Technical Support Data radio button	Cisco IMC displays this radio button when a technical support data file is available to download. To replace the existing support data file with a new one, select this option and click **Regenerate**. When data collection is complete, click **Download Technical Support Data to Local File** in the **Actions** area to download the file.
Download to local file radio button	Cisco IMC enables this radio button when a technical support data file is available to download. To download the existing file, select this option and click **Download**. **Note** If the server includes any of the supported network adapter cards, the data file also includes technical support data from the adapter card.
Generate and Download button	Allows you to generate and download the technical support data file.
Generate button	Allows you to generate the technical support data file.
Download button	Allows you to download the technical support data file after it is generated.

Step 5 Click **Generate** to create the data file. When data collection is complete, click **Download Technical Support Data to Local File** in the **Actions** area to download the file..

What to do next

Provide the generated report file to Cisco TAC.

Resetting to Factory Default

On rare occasions, such as an issue with the current running firmware or troubleshooting a server, you might require to reset the server components to the factory default. When this happens, all user-configurable settings are reset.

This procedure is not part of the normal server maintenance. After you reset the server components, you are logged off and must log in again. You might also lose connectivity and might need to reconfigure the network settings. Some of the inventory information might not be available during this transition.

When you reset the BMC to factory settings, the serial number is displayed in the Cisco IMCXXXXXX format, where XXXXXX is the serial number of the server.

Important **When you move VIC adapters from other generation C-Series servers (for example M4 servers) to the M5 generation C-Series servers or M5 servers to other generation servers, you must reset the adapters to factory defaults.**

Before you begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to reset the server components to factory defaults.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Utilities**.

Step 3 In the **Actions** area of the **Utilities** pane, click **Reset to Factory Default**.

Step 4 In the **Reset to Factory Default** dialog box, review the following information:

Name	Description
All checkbox	If checked, it resets all the components of the server to factory settings. Expand to select the specific component that you want to reset to factory settings.

Name	Description
BMC checkbox	If checked, it resets the BMC to factory settings. **Note** After you reset the BMC to factory settings, the serial number is displayed in the Cisco IMCXXXXXX format, where XXXXXX is the serial number of the server. After factory defaults of BMC NIC Mode, **Shared LOM Extended** is configured by default.
Storage checkbox	If checked, it resets all the available storage adapters to factory settings. When you reset a storage adapter, the data on the disk is not modified but the virtual drive meta data will be erased which may result in data loss. Expand to select the specific storage adapters that you want to reset to factory settings. **Note** The host must be powered on to reset storage adapters to factory defaults.
VIC checkbox	If checked, it resets all the available VICs to factory settings. Expand to select the specific VICs that you want to reset to factory settings. **Note** The host must be powered on to reset VIC adapters to factory defaults.
Reset button	Resets the selected components to the factory settings.

Step 5 Click **Reset** to reset the selected components to the factory-default settings.

A reboot of Cisco IMC, while the host is performing BIOS POST (Power on Self Test) or is in EFI shell, powers down the host for a short amount of time. Cisco IMC powers on when it is ready. Upon restart, the network configuration mode is set to **Cisco Card** mode by default.

Exporting and Importing the Cisco IMC Configuration

Exporting and Importing the Cisco IMC Configuration

To perform a backup of the Cisco IMC configuration, you take a snapshot of the system configuration and export the resulting Cisco IMC configuration file to a location on your network. The export operation saves information from the management plane only; it does not back up data on the servers. Sensitive configuration information such as user accounts and the server certificate are not exported.

You can restore an exported Cisco IMC configuration file to the same system or you can import it to another Cisco IMC system, provided that the software version of the importing system is the same as or is configuration-compatible with the software version of the exporting system. When you import a configuration file to another system as a configuration template, you must modify system-specific settings such as IP addresses and host names. An import operation modifies information on the management plane only.

The Cisco IMC configuration file is an XML text file whose structure and elements correspond to the Cisco IMC command modes.

When performing an export or import operation, consider these guidelines:

- You can perform an export or an import while the system is up and running. While an export operation has no impact on the server or network traffic, some modifications caused by an import operation, such as IP address changes, can disrupt traffic or cause a server reboot.
- You cannot execute an export and an import simultaneously.

You can perform an import or an export operation on the following features:

- Cisco IMC version

Note You can only export this information.

- Network settings
- Technical support
- Logging control for local and remote logs
- Power policies
- BIOS - BIOS Parameters

Note Precision boot is not supported.

- Communication services
- Remote presence
- User management - LDAP
- Event management
- SNMP
- Dynamic Storage Configuration
- Chassis Description

Exporting the Cisco IMC Configuration

Note For security reasons, this operation does not export user accounts or the server certificate.

Before you begin

Obtain the backup remote server IP address.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Utilities**.

Step 3 In the **Actions** area of the **Utilities** pane, click **Export Configuration**.

Step 4 In the **Export Configuration** dialog box, complete the following fields:

Name	Description
Select Component for Export drop-down list	The component type. This can be one of the following: • **BMC** • **VIC Adapter(s)** Depending on the component you choose, the configuration of that component is exported.
Export To drop-down list	The location where you want to save the XML configuration file. This can be one of the following: • **Local**: Select this option and click **Export** to save the XML configuration file to a drive that is local to the computer running the Cisco IMC GUI.. When you select this option, Cisco IMC GUI displays a **File Download** dialog box that lets you navigate to the location to which the configuration file should be saved. • **Remote Server**: Select this option to import the XML configuration file from a remote server. When you select this option, Cisco IMC GUI displays the remote server fields. • **Front Panel USB**: Select this option to export the configuration file to a USB storage device connected to the server. **Note** • Front Panel USB option to export Cisco IMC configuration is available only if Smart Access USB is enabled and a USB storage device is connected to the server. • This option is available only when you choose **BMC** in the Select Component drop-down list.

Name	Description
Export To drop-down list	The remote server type. This can be one of the following: • **TFTP Server** • **FTP Server** • **SFTP Server** • **SCP Server** • **HTTP Server** **Note** If you chose SCP or SFTP as the remote server type while performing this action, a pop-up window is displayed with the message *Server (RSA) key fingerprint is <server_finger_print _ID> Do you wish to continue?*. Click Yes or No depending on the authenticity of the server fingerprint. The fingerprint is based on the host's public key and helps you to identify or verify the host you are connecting to.
Server IP/Hostname field	The IPv4 or IPv6 address, or hostname of the server to which the configuration file will be exported. Depending on the remote server type selected in the **Export to** drop-down list, the name of the field may vary.
Path and Filename field	The path and filename Cisco IMC should use when exporting the file to the remote server.
Username	The username the system should use to log in to the remote server. This field does not apply if the protocol is TFTP or HTTP.
Password	The password for the remote server username. This field does not apply if the protocol is TFTP or HTTP.
Passphrase	The passphrase that uses the AES256 algorithm to encrypt the LDAP and SNMP v3 user passwords in the exported configuration files. Enter a string of 6 to 127 characters. Do not enter the following characters: ! # $ & < > ? ; ' | ` ~ \ % ^ ( )"

Step 5 Click **Export**.

Importing the Cisco IMC Configuration

Before you begin

If you want to restore the SNMP configuration information when you import the configuration file, make sure that SNMP is disabled on this server before you do the import. If SNMP is enabled when you perform the import, Cisco IMC does not overwrite the current values with those saved in the configuration file.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Utilities**.

Step 3 In the **Actions** area of the **Utilities** pane, click **Import Configuration**.

Step 4 In the **Import Configuration** dialog box, complete the following fields:

Name	Description
Select Component for Import drop-down list	The component type. This can be one of the following: • **BMC** • **VIC Adapter(s)** Depending on the component you choose, the configuration of that component is imported.
Import From drop-down list	The location of the XML configuration file. This can be one of the following: • **Local**: Select this option to import the XML configuration file to a drive that is local to the computer running Cisco IMC GUI. When you select this option, Cisco IMC GUI displays a **Browse** button that lets you navigate to the file you want to import. • **Remote Server**: Select this option to import the XML configuration file from a remote server. When you select this option, Cisco IMC GUI displays the remote server fields. • **Front Panel USB**: Select this option to import the configuration file from a USB storage device connected to the server. **Note** • Front Panel USB option to import Cisco IMC configuration is available only if Smart Access USB is enabled and a USB storage device is connected to the server. • This option is available only when you choose **BMC** in the Select Component drop-down list.

Name	Description
Import From drop-down list	**Note** These options are available only when you choose **Remote**. The remote server type. This can be one of the following: • **TFTP Server** • **FTP Server** • **SFTP Server** • **SCP Server** • **HTTP Server** **Note** If you chose SCP or SFTP as the remote server type while performing this action, a pop-up window is displayed with the message *Server (RSA) key fingerprint is <server_finger_print _ID> Do you wish to continue?*. Click Yes or No depending on the authenticity of the server fingerprint. The fingerprint is based on the host's public key and helps you to identify or verify the host you are connecting to.
Server IP/Hostname field	The IPv4 or IPv6 address, or hostname of the server on which the configuration file resides. Depending on the remote server type selected in the **Import From** drop-down list, the name of the field might vary.
Path and Filename field	The path and filename of the configuration file on the remote server.
Username	The username the system should use to log in to the remote server. This field does not apply if the protocol is TFTP or HTTP.
Password	The password for the remote server username. This field does not apply if the protocol is TFTP or HTTP.
Passphrase	The passphrase that uses the AES256 algorithm to encrypt the LDAP and SNMP v3 user passwords in the imported configuration files. Enter a string of 6 to 127 characters. Do not enter the following characters: ! # $ & < > ? ; ' | ` ~ \ % ^ ( )" **Note** If you edit the encrypted sections in the configuration file and try to import it, the edits will be ignored and the import operation displays a partially successful message.

Step 5 Click **Import**.

Generating Non Maskable Interrupts to the Host

In some situations, the server might hang and not respond to traditional debug mechanisms. By generating a non maskable interrupt (NMI) to the host, you can create and send a crash dump file of the server and use it to debug the server.

Depending on the type of operating system associated with the server, this task might restart the OS.

Before you begin

- You must log in as a user with admin privileges.
- The server must be powered on.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Utilities**.

Step 3 In the **Actions** area of the **Utilities** pane, click **Generate NMI to Host**.

Step 4 In the **Generate NMI to Host** dialog box, review the following information:

Actions	Description
Generate NMI to drop-down list	Allows you to select the server for which you want to generate the non maskable interrupt (NMI). This can be one of the following: • **Server 1** • **Server 2**

Step 5 Click **Send**.

This action sends an NMI signal to the host, which might restart the OS.

Adding or Updating the Cisco IMC Banner

You can add or update the Cisco IMC banner by entering important information such as copyright or customized messages. Complete the following steps:

Before you begin

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Utilities**.

Step 3 In the **Actions** area of the **Utilities** pane, click **Add/Update Cisco IMC Banner**.

Step 4 In the **Add/Update Cisco IMC Banner** dialog box, complete the following fields:

Name	Description
Banner (80 Chars per line. Max 2K Chars.) field	Enter copyright information or messages that you want to display on the login screen, before logging on to the Web UI or the command line interface.
Restart SSH checkbox	When checked, the active SSH sessions are terminated after you click the **Save Banner** button.

Step 5 Click **Save Banner**.

What to do next

Viewing Cisco IMC Last Reset Reason

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Utilities**.

Step 3 In the **Actions** area of the **Utilities** pane, view the following information under the **Last Reset Reason** area.

Name	Description
Component field	The component that was last reset.
Status field	The reason why the component was last reset. This can be one of the following: • **watchdog-reset**—The watchdog-timer resets when the Cisco IMC memory reaches full capacity. • **ac-cycle**— PSU power cables are removed (no power input). • **graceful-reboot**— Cisco IMC reboot occurs.

Downloading Hardware Inventory to a Local File

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Utilities**.

Step 3 In the **Actions** area of the **Utilities** pane, click **Generate Inventory Data**.

Step 4 In the **Generate Inventory Data** dialog box, complete the following fields:

Name	Description
Generate Inventory Data radio button	Cisco IMC displays this radio button when there is no hardware inventory data file to download.
Download to local file radio button	Cisco IMC enables this radio button when a inventory data file is available to download. To download the existing file, select this option and click **Download**.

Step 5 Click **Generate** to create the data file. When data collection is complete, select the **Download Inventory Data to Local File** radio button and click **Download** to download the file locally.

Exporting Hardware Inventory Data to a Remote Server

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** menu.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Utilities**.

Step 3 In the **Actions** area of the **Utilities** pane, click **Export Hardware Inventory Data to Remote**.

Step 4 In the **Export Hardware Inventory Data** dialog box, complete the following fields:

Name	Description
Export Hardware Inventory Data to drop-down list	The remote server type. This can be one of the following: • **TFTP Server** • **FTP Server** • **SFTP Server** • **SCP Server** • **HTTP Server** **Note** If you chose SCP or SFTP as the remote server type while performing this action, a pop-up window is displayed with the message *Server (RSA) key fingerprint is <server_finger_print _ID> Do you wish to continue?*. Click Yes or No depending on the authenticity of the server fingerprint. The fingerprint is based on the host's public key and helps you to identify or verify the host you are connecting to.
Server IP/Hostname field	The IP address or hostname of the server on which the data file should be stored. Depending on the setting in the **Export Hardware Inventory Data to** drop-down list, the name of the field may vary.
Path and Filename field	The path and filename Cisco IMC should use when exporting the file to the remote server.
Username	The username the system should use to log in to the remote server. This field does not apply if the protocol is TFTP or HTTP.
Password	The password for the remote server username. This field does not apply if the protocol is TFTP or HTTP.

Step 5 Click **Export**.

Uploading a PID Catalog

Before you begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to upload a PID catalog.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.

Step 2 On the **Admin** tab, click **Utilities**.

Step 3 In the **Work** pane, click the **Upload PID Catalog** link.

The **Upload PID Catalog** dialog box appears.

Depending on the location of the catalog file, choose one of the options.

Step 4 In the **Upload PID Catalog from Local File** dialog box, click **Browse** and use the **Choose File to Upload** dialog box to select the catalog file that you want to upload.

Name	Description
File field	The PID catalog file that you want to upload.
Browse button	Opens a dialog box that allows you to navigate to the appropriate file.

Step 5 In the **Upload PID Catalog from Remote Server** dialog box, complete the following fields:

Name	Description
Upload PID Catalog from Remote Server drop-down list	The remote server type. This can be one of the following: • **TFTP** • **FTP** • **SFTP** • **SCP** • **HTTP**
Server IP/Hostname field	The IP address or hostname of the server on which the PID catalog information is available. Depending on the setting in the Upload PID Catalog from drop-down list, the name of the field may vary.
Path and Filename field	The path and filename of the catalog file on the remote server.
Username field	Username of the remote server.
Password field	Password of the remote server.
Upload button	Uploads the selected PID catalog. **Note** If you chose SCP or SFTP as the remote server type while performing this action, a pop-up window is displayed with the message *Server (RSA) key fingerprint is <server_finger_print _ID> Do you wish to continue?*. Click Yes or No depending on the authenticity of the server fingerprint. The fingerprint is based on the host's public key and helps you to identify or verify the host you are connecting to.

Name	Description
Cancel button	Closes the wizard without making any changes to the firmware versions stored on the server.

Activating a PID Catalog

Caution BMC reboots automatically once a PID catalog is activated.

You must reboot the server after activating a PID catalog.

Before you begin

You must log in as a user with admin privileges to activate a PID catalog.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.

Step 2 On the **Admin** tab, click **Utilities**.

Step 3 In the **Work** pane, click the **Activate PID Catalog** link.

The **Activate PID Catalog** dialog box appears. Complete the following fields:

Name	Description
Activate button	Allows you to activate the PID catalog.

Note The **Activate PID Catalog** link is greyed out when you log on to the system for the first time. It gets activated once you upload a PID catalog to the server. After you upload a PID file, the link remains active and you can activate the PID multiple times.

Enabling Smart Access USB

When you enable the smart access USB feature, the front panel USB device disconnects from the host operating system and connects to Cisco IMC. After enabling the smart access USB feature, you can use the front panel USB device to export technical support data, import or export Cisco IMC configuration, or update Cisco IMC, BIOS, and VIC firmware.

The supported file systems for smart access USB are as follows:

- EXT2

- EXT3
- EXT 4
- FAT 32
- FAT 16
- DOS

Note Huge file support is not supported in BMC. For EXT 4 file system, huge file support has to be turned off.

Before you begin

You must log in with admin privileges to perform this task.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.

Step 2 In the **Admin** menu, click **Utilities**.

Step 3 In the **Actions** area, click **Enable Smart Access USB**.

This is a toggle button. To disable smart access, click **Disable Smart Access USB**. This button is visible only after you enable smart access USB. When you disable the smart access USB feature, the front panel USB device disconnects from Cisco IMC and connects to the host operating system.

Enabling or Disabling Cisco Intersight Management

When you enable the Intersight management, it establishes a bi-directional communication between the Intersight Cloud application and the M5 server.

Note Port numbers 8888-8889 are reserved for Intersight communication.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.

Step 2 In the **Admin** tab, click **Device Connector**.

Step 3 In the **Intersight Management** area, click **On** to enable the Intersight management.
The Connection area displays the connection status of the Intersight management. If the device connector has not been able to establish a connection to Intersight management, review the recommendations provided in the **Details & Recommendations** drop-down list to fix the connection issues.

Step 4 Select the **Access Mode** as **Read-only** or **Allow Control.**
When the **Read-only** access mode is selected, then you cannot configure the device through Intersight. Therefore, any configuration that comes to the device connector through cloud is rejected with an error code. If the **Allow Control** mode is selected, then you have full control to configure the device through Intersight.

Step 5 To disable the Intersight management, click **Off**.
When you disable the Intersight management, the Connection area displays the connection status as **Administratively Disabled**.

Configuring HTTPS Proxy Settings for Device Connector

You can manually configure the HTTPS proxy settings of the server.

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.

Step 2 In the **Admin** tab, click **Device Connector**.

Step 3 In the **Connections** area, click **HTTPS Proxy Settings** and enter the proxy settings:

Action Name	Description
Off button	Disables the HTTPS proxy settings.
Manual button	Allows you to manually configure the HTTPS proxy settings.
Proxy Hostname/IP field	The IP address or the host name of the proxy server.
Proxy Port field	The port number of the proxy server.
Authentication toggle button	Enabling this option allows you to provide the credentials for the proxy server.
Username field	The credentials for the proxy server.
Password field	

Step 4 In the **HTTPS Proxy Settings** dialog box, after adding the information, click **Save**.

Viewing Intersight Device Connector Properties

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.

Step 2 In the **Admin** tab, click **Device Connector**.

Step 3 In the **Intersight Management** area, review the following information:

Action Name	Description
Enabled radio button	Allows you to enable or disable the Intersight management. This can be one of the following: • **On**—Enables the Intersight management. You can claim this system and leverage the capabilities of Cisco Intersight. • **Off**—Disables the Intersight management. No communication will be allowed to Cisco Intersight.

Step 4 In the **Connection** area, review the following information:

Name	Description
Status field	Displays the status of the connection to Intersight. This can be one of the following: • **Administratively Disabled**—Indicates that the Intersight management has been disabled. • **DNS Misconfigured**— Indicates that the DNS details have not been configured in BMC. • **UCS Connect Network Error**—Indicates the invalid network configurations. • **Certificate Error**—Indicates invalid certificate. • **Claimed**—Indicates that the device is claimed in Intersight. • **Not Claimed**—Indicates that the device is registered, but not claimed in Intersight.
Retry Connection link	Allows you to retry the connection to Intersight. This option appears only when there are Intersight connection issues.
Details & Recommendations drop-down list	Lists the details and recommendations to fix the connection issues based on the status.
HTTPS Proxy Settings dialog box	Allows you to manually configure HTTPS proxy settings required for the Intersight connection.
Serial Number field	Displays the serial number of the BMC.
Security Token field	Appears when the connection status is **Not Claimed**. Use the security token to securely onboard the server in Intersight.

Step 5 In the **Connections** area, click **HTTPS Proxy Settings** and review the following information:

Action Name	Description
Off button	Disables the HTTPS proxy settings.
Manual button	Allows you to manually configure the HTTPS proxy settings.
Proxy Hostname/IP field	The IP address or the host name of the proxy server.
Proxy Port field	The port number of the proxy server.
Authentication toggle button	Enabling this option allows you to provide the credentials for the proxy server.
Username field	The credentials for the proxy server.
Password field	

Viewing Intersight Device Connector Properties

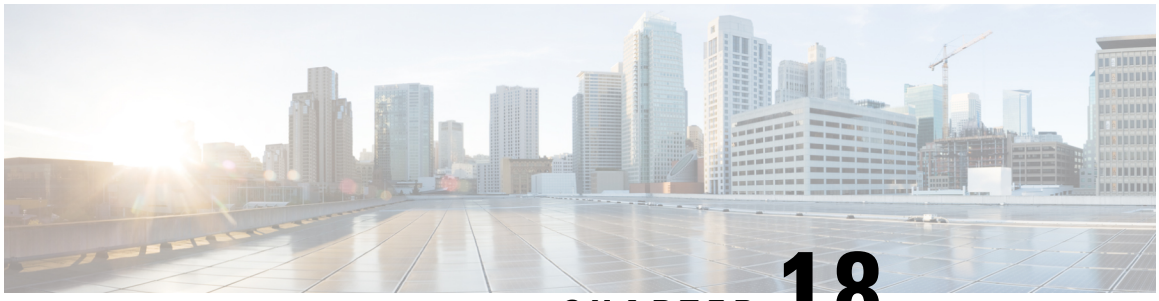
Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Admin** tab.

Step 2 In the **Admin** tab, click **Device Connector**.

Step 3 In the **Intersight Management** area, review the following information:

Action Name	Description
Enabled radio button	Allows you to enable or disable the Intersight management. This can be one of the following: • **On**—Enables the Intersight management. You can claim this system and leverage the capabilities of Cisco Intersight. • **Off**—Disables the Intersight management. No communication will be allowed to Cisco Intersight.



CHAPTER 18

Troubleshooting

This chapter includes the following sections:

Recording the Last Boot Process

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Compute** menu.

Step 2 In the work pane, click the **TroubleShooting** tab.

Step 3 In the **Bootstrap Process Recording** area of the **Troubleshooting** tab, check **Enable Recording** check-box.

By default, this option is enabled.

Caution This task is for troubleshooting purpose, and might impact Cisco IMC performance if it is enabled all the time.

Step 4 (Optional) If you want to record the boot process until BIOS POST, then check **Stop On BIOS POST** check-box.

Step 5 Click **Save Changes**

Step 6 On the tool bar above the **Work** pane, click **Power On Server**.

Step 7 In the **Actions** area, of the **Bootstrap Process Recording** pane, click **Play Recording**.

A confirmation dialog box with instructions on supported Java version appears.

Step 8 Review the instructions and click **Ok**.

The **DVR Player Controls** dialog box opens. This dialog box plays the recording of the last boot process. If you have enabled **Stop On BIOS POST** option then the system plays the recording process only till BIOS POST.

This recording can be reviewed to analyze the factors that caused the system to reboot.

Step 9 In the **Actions** area of the **Bootstrap Process Recording** area, click **Download Recording**.

Follow the instructions to download.

Note The file is saved in a `.dvc` format to a local drive. You can view this recording using KVM player or an offline player. Every time you choose **Download Recording** option, the last boot process is recorded, it autogenerate the file name, and save it in the path specified earlier.

Step 10 Once the download is complete, you can select the file that you want play the video of the recording, and click **Open**.
A **DVR Player Controls** window opens and plays the video of the selected file.

Recording the Last Crash

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Compute** menu.

Step 2 In the work pane, click the **TroubleShooting** tab.

Step 3 In the **Crash Recording** area of the **Troubleshooting** tab, check the **Enable Recording** check-box.

Caution This task is for troubleshooting purpose, and might impact Cisco IMC performance if it is enabled all the time.

Step 4 Click **Save Changes**.
Capture Recording button in the **Actions** area is enabled.

Step 5 (Optional) In the **Actions** area, click **Capture Recording**, to capture the recording of the system that crashed automatically.

Note If you choose this option, it overwrites the existing crash records file. Click **OK** to continue.

Step 6 Click **Play Recording** in the **Actions** area to view the recording of the operations that ran on the server.

A confirmation dialog box with instructions on supported Java version appears.

Step 7 Review the instructions and click **Ok**.

The **DVR Player Controls** dialog box appears. This dialog box plays the recording of the operations that ran on the server in the last few minutes. This recording can be reviewed to analyze the factors that caused system to crash.

Step 8 In the **Actions** area of the **Crash Recording** area, click **Download Recording**.

Follow the instructions to download.

Note The file is saved in a `.dvc` format to a local drive. You can view this recording using KVM player or an offline player. Every time you choose **Download Recording** option, the last crash process is recorded, it autogenerate the file name, and save it in the path specified earlier.

Step 9 Once the download is complete, you can select the file that you want play the video of the recording, and click **Open**.
A **DVR Player Controls** window opens and plays the video of the selected file.

Downloading a DVR Player

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.

Step 2 On the **Server** tab, click **Troubleshooting**.

Step 3 In the **Player** area of the **Troubleshooting** tab, click **Download Player**.

Step 4 Follow the instructions to download. These files are saved to your local drive as a zipped file in a .tgz file format.

The offline player is stored for Windows, Linux, and MAC.

Step 5 Extract the zip file. The zip file generally gets saved below the bootstrap file, and its name follows the format

```
offline.tgz
```

Step 6 Open the script file that you want to review the video recording.

Note If you want to play the recording for Windows, then ensure that the Java version running on your system and in the script file are the same. If the Windows script file fails to play the recording, then follow these steps:

a) Extract the Windows script file to your desktop.
b) Open the file using notepad.
c) Search for jre, and replace the Java version to match the version running on your system. By default, the Java version is set to jre7.
d) Save the file.

After you update the Java version, you can delete the extracted files from your desktop.

Note Verification of Java version is required only for Windows OS. For Linux and MAC, the Java version is picked automatically.

Step 7 Navigate to the folder in which these files are downloaded and open the script file that you want to play the video recording.
The DVR player is launched, playing the video of the operations that ran on the server.

Playing a Recorded Video Using the DVR Player on the KVM Console

Procedure

Step 1 In the **Navigation** pane, click the **Server** tab.

Step 2 On the **Server** tab, click **Sensors**.

Step 3 In the **Remote Presence** pane, click the **Virtual KVM** tab.

Step 4 In the **Actions** area of the **Virtual KVM** tab, click **Launch KVM Console**.

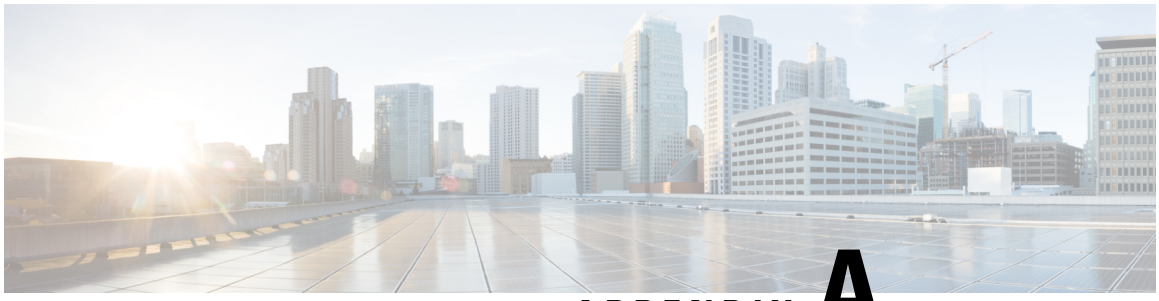
Note You can also launch KVM console by clicking **Launch KVM Console** button on the toolbar displayed above the **Work** pane.

The **KVM Console** opens in a separate window.

Step 5 On the **KVM Console** window, choose **Tools** > **Recorder /Playback Controls**.
A DVR Player Controls window opens.

Step 6 On the **DVR Player Controls** window, click **Open** button.

Step 7 Choose the file that you want to play the recording, and click **Open**.
The DVR player is launched, playing the video of the operations that ran on the server.



APPENDIX A

BIOS Parameters by Server Model

This section contains the following topics:

C220 M5 and C240 M5

I/O Tab

Note BIOS parameters listed in this tab may vary depending on the server.

Table 16: BIOS Parameters in I/O Tab

Name	Description
Reboot Host Immediately checkbox	Upon checking, reboots the host server immediately. You must check the checkbox after saving changes.
Legacy USB Support drop-down list	Whether the system supports legacy USB devices. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—USB devices are only available to EFI applications. • **Enabled**—Legacy USB support is always available.
Intel VT for directed IO drop-down list	Whether the processor uses Intel Virtualization Technology (VT), which allows a platform to run multiple operating systems and applications in independent partitions. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The processor does not permit virtualization. • **Enabled**—The processor allows multiple operating systems in independent partitions. **Note** If you change this option, you must power cycle the server before the setting takes effect.

Name	Description
Intel VTD coherency support drop-down list	Whether the processor supports Intel VT-d Coherency. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The processor does not support coherency. • **Enabled**—The processor uses VT-d Coherency as required.
Intel VTD ATS support drop-down list	Whether the processor supports Intel VT-d Address Translation Services (ATS). This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The processor does not support ATS. • **Enabled**—The processor uses VT-d ATS as required.
All Onboard LOM Oprom drop-down list	Whether Option ROM is available on all LOM ports. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—Option ROM is disabled on all the ports. • **Enabled**—Option ROM is enabled on all the ports.
Onboard LOM Port0 Oprom drop-down list	Whether Option ROM is available on the LOM port 0. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—Option ROM is not available on LOM port 0. • **Enabled**—Option ROM is available on LOM port 0.
Onboard LOM Port1 Oprom drop-down list	Whether Option ROM is available on the LOM port 1. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—Option ROM is not available on LOM port 1. • **Enabled**—Option ROM is available on LOM port 1.
Pcie Slot*n* Oprom drop-down list	Whether the server can use the Option ROMs present in the PCIe card slot designated by *n*. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—Option ROM for slot *n* is not available. • **Enabled**—Option ROM for slot *n* is available.
MLOM Oprom drop-down list	This options allows you to control the Option ROM execution of the PCIe adapter connected to the MLOM slot. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—Does not execute Option ROM of the PCIe adapter connected to the MLOM slot. • **Enabled**—Executes Option ROM of the PCIe adapter connected to the MLOM slot.

Name	Description
HBA Oprom drop-down list	This options allows you to control the Option ROM execution of the PCIe adapter connected to the HBA slot. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—Does not execute Option ROM of the PCIe adapter connected to the HBA slot. • **Enabled**—Executes Option ROM of the PCIe adapter connected to the HBA slot.
Front NVME1 Oprom drop-down list	This options allows you to control the Option ROM execution of the PCIe adapter connected to the SSD:NVMe1 slot. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—Does not execute Option ROM of the PCIe adapter connected to the SSD:NVMe1 slot. • **Enabled**—Executes Option ROM of the PCIe adapter connected to the SSD:NVMe1 slot
Front NVME2 Oprom drop-down list	This options allows you to control the Option ROM execution of the PCIe adapter connected to the SSD:NVMe2 slot. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—Does not execute Option ROM of the PCIe adapter connected to the SSD:NVMe2 slot. • **Enabled**—Executes Option ROM of the PCIe adapter connected to the SSD:NVMe2 slot
HBA Link Speed drop-down list	This option allows you to restrict the maximum speed of an adapter card installed in PCIe HBA slot. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The maximum speed is not restricted. • **Auto**—System selects the maximum speed allowed. • **GEN1**—2.5GT/s (gigatransfers per second) is the maximum speed allowed. • **GEN2**—5GT/s is the maximum speed allowed. • **GEN3**—8GT/s is the maximum speed allowed.
MLOM Link Speed drop-down list	This option allows you to restrict the maximum speed of an adapter card installed in PCIe MLOM slot. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The maximum speed is not restricted. • **Auto**—System selects the maximum speed allowed. • **GEN1**—2.5GT/s (gigatransfers per second) is the maximum speed allowed. • **GEN2**—5GT/s is the maximum speed allowed. • **GEN3**—8GT/s is the maximum speed allowed.

Name	Description
PCIe Slot*n* Link Speed drop-down list	System IO Controller *n* (SIOCn) add-on slot (designated by *n*) link speed. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—Slot is disabled, and the card is not enumerated. • **Auto**— The default link speed. Link speed is automatically assigned. • **GEN1**—Link speed can reach up to first generation. • **GEN2**—Link speed can reach up to second generation. • **GEN3**—Link speed can reach up to third generation.
Front NVME1 Link Speed drop-down list	Link speed for NVMe front slot 1. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—Slot is disabled, and the card is not enumerated. • **Auto**—The default link speed. Link speed is automatically assigned. • **GEN1**—Link speed can reach up to first generation. • **GEN2**—Link speed can reach up to second generation. • **GEN3**—Link speed can reach up to third generation.
Front NVME2 Link Speed drop-down list	Link speed for NVMe front slot 2. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—Slot is disabled, and the card is not enumerated. • **Auto**—The default link speed. Link speed is automatically assigned. • **GEN1**—Link speed can reach up to first generation. • **GEN2**—Link speed can reach up to second generation. • **GEN3**—Link speed can reach up to third generation.
Rear NVME1 Link Speed drop-down list	Link speed for NVMe rear slot 1. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—Slot is disabled, and the card is not enumerated. • **Auto**—The default link speed. Link speed is automatically assigned. • **GEN1**—Link speed can reach up to first generation. • **GEN2**—Link speed can reach up to second generation. • **GEN3**—Link speed can reach up to third generation.

Name	Description
Rear NVME2 Link Speed drop-down list	Link speed for NVMe rear slot 2. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—Slot is disabled, and the card is not enumerated. • **Auto**—The default link speed. Link speed is automatically assigned. • **GEN1**—Link speed can reach up to first generation. • **GEN2**—Link speed can reach up to second generation. • **GEN3**—Link speed can reach up to third generation.
VGA Priority drop-down list	Allows you to set the priority for VGA graphics devices if multiple VGA devices are found in the system. This can be one of the following: • **OnBoard**—Priority is given to the onboard VGA device. BIOS post screen and OS boot are driven through the onboard VGA port. • **OffBoard**—Priority is given to the PCIE Graphics adapter. BIOS post screen and OS boot are driven through the external graphics adapter port. • **OnBoardDisabled**—Priority is given to the PCIe Graphics adapter, and the onboard VGA device is disabled. The vKVM does not function when the onboard VGA is disabled.
P-SATA OptionROM drop-down list	Allows you to select the PCH SATA optionROM mode. This can be one of the following: • **LSI SW Raid**— Sets both SATA and sSATA controllers to raid mode for LSI SW Raid. • **Disabled**— Disables both SATA and sSATA controllers.
M2.SATA OptionROM drop-down list	Mode of operation of Serial Advanced Technology Attachment (SATA) Solid State Drives (SSD). This can be one of the following: • **AHCI**— Sets both SATA and sSATA controllers to AHCI mode. • **LSI SW Raid**— Sets both SATA and sSATA controllers to raid mode for LSI SW Raid. • **Disabled**— Disables both SATA and sSATA controllers.
USB Port Rear drop-down list	Whether the rear panel USB devices are enabled or disabled. This can be one of the following • **Disabled**— Disables the rear panel USB ports. Devices connected to these ports are not detected by the BIOS and operating system. • **Enabled**— Enables the rear panel USB ports. Devices connected to these ports are detected by the BIOS and operating system.

Name	Description
USB Port Front drop-down list	Whether the front panel USB devices are enabled or disabled. This can be one of the following • **Disabled**— Disables the front panel USB ports. Devices connected to these ports are not detected by the BIOS and operating system. • **Enabled**— Enables the front panel USB ports. Devices connected to these ports are detected by the BIOS and operating system.
USB Port Internal drop-down list	Whether the internal USB devices are enabled or disabled. This can be one of the following • **Disabled**— Disables the internal USB ports. Devices connected to these ports are not detected by the BIOS and operating system. • **Enabled**— Enables the internal USB ports. Devices connected to these ports are detected by the BIOS and operating system.
USB Port KVM drop-down list	Whether the KVM ports are enabled or disabled. This can be one of the following • **Disabled**— Disables the KVM keyboard and/or mouse devices. Keyboard and/or mouse will not work in the KVM window. • **Enabled**— Enables the KVM keyboard and/or mouse devices.
USB Port SD Card drop-down list	Whether the SD card is enabled or disabled. This can be one of the following • **Disabled**— Disables the SD card ports. Devices connected to these ports are not detected by the BIOS and operating system. • **Enabled**— Enables the SD card ports. Devices connected to these ports are detected by the BIOS and operating system.
IPV6 PXE Support drop-down list	Enables or disables IPv6 support for PXE. This can be one of the following • **Disabled**—IPv6 PXE support is not available. • **Enabled**—IPv6 PXE support is always available.

Server Management Tab

Note BIOS parameters listed in this tab may vary depending on the server.

Table 17: BIOS Parameters in Server Management Tab

Name	Description
Reboot Host Immediately checkbox	If the Reboot Host Immediately check box is checked, the server is rebooted immediately and the new BIOS settings go into effect. Otherwise the changes are saved until the server is manually rebooted.
OS Boot Watchdog Timer Policy drop-down list	What action the system takes if the watchdog timer expires. This can be one of the following: • **Power Off**—The server is powered off if the watchdog timer expires during OS boot. • **Reset**—The server is reset if the watchdog timer expires during OS boot. **Note** This option is only applicable if you enable the OS Boot Watchdog Timer.
OS Watchdog Timer drop-down list	Whether the BIOS programs the watchdog timer with a specified timeout value. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The watchdog timer is not used to track how long the server takes to boot. • **Enabled**—The watchdog timer tracks how long the server takes to boot. If the server does not boot within the length of time specified in the **OS Boot Watchdog Timer Timeout** field, the Cisco IMC logs an error and takes the action specified in the **OS Boot Watchdog Policy** field.
OS Watchdog Timer Timeout drop-down list	If OS does not boot within the specified time, OS watchdog timer expires and system takes action according to timer policy. This can be one of the following: • **5 Minutes**—The OS watchdog timer expires 5 minutes after it begins to boot. • **10 Minutes**—The OS watchdog timer expires 10 minutes after it begins to boot. • **15 Minutes**—The OS watchdog timer expires 15 minutes after it begins to boot. • **20 Minutes**—The OS watchdog timer expires 20 minutes after it begins to boot. **Note** This option is only applicable if you enable the OS Boot Watchdog Timer.

Name	Description
Baud Rate drop-down list	What Baud rate is used for the serial port transmission speed. If you disable Console Redirection, this option is not available. This can be one of the following: • **9.6k**—A 9,600 Baud rate is used. • **19.2k**—A 19,200 Baud rate is used. • **38.4k**—A 38,400 Baud rate is used. • **57.6k**—A 57,600 Baud rate is used. • **115.2k**—A 115,200 Baud rate is used. This setting must match the setting on the remote terminal application.
Console Redirection drop-down list	Allows a serial port to be used for console redirection during POST and BIOS booting. After the OS has booted, console redirection is irrelevant. This can be one of the following: • **Serial Port A**—Enables console redirection on serial port A during POST. • **Serial Port B**—Enables console redirection on serial port B during POST. • **Disabled**—No console redirection occurs during POST.
CDN Control drop-down list	Whether the Ethernet Network naming convention is according to Consistent Device Naming (CDN) or the traditional way of naming conventions. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**— CDN support for VIC cards is disabled • **Enabled**— CDN support is enabled for VIC cards.
FRB 2 Timer drop-down list	Whether the FRB2 timer is used by Cisco IMC to recover the system if it hangs during POST. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The FRB2 timer is not used. • **Enabled**—The FRB2 timer is started during POST and used to recover the system if necessary.

Name	Description
Flow Control drop-down list	Whether a handshake protocol is used for flow control. Request to Send / Clear to Send (RTS/CTS) helps to reduce frame collisions that can be introduced by a hidden terminal problem. This can be one of the following: • **None**—No flow control is used. • **RTS/CTS**—RTS/CTS is used for flow control. **Note** This setting must match the setting on the remote terminal application.
Terminal type drop-down list	What type of character formatting is used for console redirection. This can be one of the following: • **PC-ANSI**—The PC-ANSI terminal font is used. • **VT100**—A supported VT100 video terminal and its character set are used. • **VT100-PLUS**—A supported VT100-plus video terminal and its character set are used. • **VT-UTF8**—A video terminal with the UTF-8 character set is used.

Security Tab

Note BIOS parameters listed in this tab may vary depending on the server.

Table 18: BIOS Parameters in Security Tab

Name	Description
Reboot Host Immediately checkbox	**If the Reboot Host Immediately check box is checked, the server is rebooted immediately and the new BIOS settings go into effect. Otherwise the changes are saved until the server is manually rebooted.**
Trusted Platform Module Support drop-down list	Trusted Platform Module (TPM) is a microchip designed to provide basic security-related functions primarily involving encryption keys. This option allows you to control the TPM Security Device support for the system. It can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The server does not use the TPM. • **Enabled**—The server uses the TPM. **Note** Contact your operating system vendor to make sure the operating system supports this feature.
Power on Password drop-down list	This token requires that you set a BIOS password before using the F2 BIOS configuration. If enabled, password needs to be validated before you access BIOS functions such as IO configuration, BIOS set up, and booting to an operating system using BIOS. It can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—Support is disabled. • **Enabled**—Support is enabled.

Processor Tab

Note BIOS parameters listed in this tab may vary depending on the server.

Table 19: BIOS Parameters in Processor Tab

Name	Description
Intel Virtualization Technology drop-down list	Whether the processor uses Intel Virtualization Technology (VT), which allows a platform to run multiple operating systems and applications in independent partitions. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The processor does not permit virtualization. • **Enabled**—The processor allows multiple operating systems in independent partitions.
Extended Apic drop-down list	Allows you to enable or disable extended APIC support. This can be one of the following: • **Enabled**—Enables APIC support • **Disabled**—Disables APIC support.
Processor C1E drop-down list	Whether the CPU transitions to its minimum frequency when entering the C1 state. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The CPU continues to run at its maximum frequency in C1 state. • **Enabled**—The CPU transitions to its minimum frequency. This option saves the maximum amount of power in C1 state. **Note** This option is available only on some C-Series servers.

Name	Description
Processor C6 Report drop-down list	Whether the BIOS sends the C6 report to the operating system. When the OS receives the report, it can transition the processor into the lower C6 power state to decrease energy usage while maintaining optimal processor performance. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The BIOS does not send the C6 report. • **Enabled**—The BIOS sends the C6 report, allowing the OS to transition the processor to the C6 low power state. **Note** **CPUPowerManagement** must be set to **Custom** or the server ignores the setting for this parameter. **Note** This option is available only on some C-Series servers.
Execute Disable Bit drop-down list	Classifies memory areas on the server to specify where application code can execute. As a result of this classification, the processor disables code execution if a malicious worm attempts to insert code in the buffer. This setting helps to prevent damage, worm propagation, and certain classes of malicious buffer overflow attacks. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The processor does not classify memory areas. • **Enabled**—The processor classifies memory areas. **Note** Contact your operating system vendor to make sure the operating system supports this feature.

Name	Description
Intel Turbo Boost Tech drop-down list	Whether the processor uses Intel Turbo Boost Technology, which allows the processor to automatically increase its frequency if it is running below power, temperature, or voltage specifications. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The processor does not increase its frequency automatically. • **Enabled**—The processor utilizes Turbo Boost Technology if required. **Note** **CPUPowerManagement** must be set to **Custom** or the server ignores the setting for this parameter.
Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Tech drop-down list	Whether the processor uses Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology, which allows the system to dynamically adjust processor voltage and core frequency. This technology can result in decreased average power consumption and decreased average heat production. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The processor never dynamically adjusts its voltage or frequency. • **Enabled**—The processor utilizes Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Technology and enables all supported processor sleep states to further conserve power. We recommend that you contact your operating system vendor to make sure the operating system supports this feature. **Note** **CPUPowerManagement** must be set to **Custom** or the server ignores the setting for this parameter.
Intel HyperThreading Tech drop-down list	Whether the processor uses Intel Hyper-Threading Technology, which allows multithreaded software applications to execute threads in parallel within each processor. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The processor does not permit hyperthreading. • **Enabled**—The processor allows for the parallel execution of multiple threads.

Name	Description
Workload Configuration drop-down list	This feature allows for workload optimization. The options are Balanced and I/O Sensitive: • **NUMA** • **UMA**
Core MultiProcessing drop-down list	Allows you to disable one or more of the physical cores on the server. This can be one of the following: • **All**—Enables all physical cores. This also enables Hyper Threading on the associated logical processor cores. • **1 through 28**—Specifies the number of physical processor cores that can run on the server. Each physical core has an associated logical core. **Note** Contact your operating system vendor to make sure the operating system supports this feature.
Sub NUMA Clustering drop-down list	Whether the CPU supports sub NUMA clustering, in which the tag directory and the memory channel are always in the same region. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**— Sub NUMA clustering does not occur. • **Enabled**— Sub NUMA clustering occurs. • **Auto** — The BIOS determines what Sub NUMA clustering is done.
IMC Interleave drop-down list	This BIOS option controls the interleaving between the Integrated Memory Controllers (IMCs). • **1-way Interleave**—There is no interleaving. • **2-way Interleave**—Addresses are interleaved between the two IMCs. • **Auto** —CPU determines the IMC Interleaving mode.

Name	Description
XPT Prefetch drop-down list	Whether XPT prefetch is used to enable a read request sent to the last level cache to issue a copy of that request to the memory controller prefetcher. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The CPU does not use the XPT Prefetch option. • **Enabled**—The CPU enables the XPT prefetch option.
UPI Prefetch drop-down list	UPI prefetch is a mechanism to get the memory read started early on a DDR bus. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The processor does not preload any cache data. • **Enabled**—The UPI prefetcher preloads the L1 cache with the data it determines to be the most relevant.
Energy Performance BIOS Config drop-down list	Allows you to determine whether system performance or energy efficiency is more important on this server. This can be one of the following: • **Performance** — The server provides all server components with full power at all times. This option maintains the highest level of performance and requires the greatest amount of power. • **Balanced Performance** — The server provides all server components with enough power to keep a balance between performance and power. • **Balanced Power** — The server provides all server components with enough power to keep a balance between performance and power. • **Power** — The server provides all server components with maximum power to keep reduce power consumption.
Power Performance Tuning drop-down list	Determines if the BIOS or Operating System can turn on the energy performance bias tuning. The options are BIOS and OS. • **BIOS**— Chooses BIOS for energy performance tuning. • **OS**— Chooses OS for energy performance tuning.

Name	Description
LLC Prefetch drop-down list	Whether the processor uses the LLC Prefetch mechanism to fetch the date into the LLC. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The processor does not preload any cache data. • **Enabled**—The LLC prefetcher preloads the L1 cache with the data it determines to be the most relevant.
Package C State	The amount of power available to the server components when they are idle. This can be one of the following: • **No Limit**—The server may enter any available C state. • **Auto** —The CPU determines the physical elevation. • **C0 C1 State**—The server provides all server components with full power at all times. This option maintains the highest level of performance and requires the greatest amount of power. • **C2**—When the CPU is idle, the system reduces the power consumption further than with the C1 option. This requires less power than C1 or C0, but it takes the server slightly longer to return to high performance mode. • **C6 Non Retention**—When the CPU is idle, the system reduces the power consumption further than with the C3 option. This option saves more power than C0, C1, or C3, but there may be performance issues until the server returns to full power. • **C6 Retention**—When the CPU is idle, the system reduces the power consumption further than with the C3 option. This option saves more power than C0, C1, or C3, but there may be performance issues until the server returns to full power.

Name	Description
Hardware P-States drop-down list	Enables processor Hardware P-State. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—HWPM is disabled. • **HWPM Native Mode**—HWPM native mode is enabled. • **HWPM OOB Mode**—HWPM Out-Of-Box mode is enabled. • **Native Mode with no Legacy** (only GUI)

Memory Tab

Note BIOS parameters listed in this tab may vary depending on the server.

Table 20: BIOS Parameters in Memory Tab

Name	Description
Reboot Host Immediately checkbox	Upon checking, reboots the host server immediately. You must check the checkbox after saving changes.
Select Memory RAS configuration drop-down list	Determines how the memory reliability, availability, and serviceability (RAS) is configured for the server. This can be one of the following: • **Maximum Performance**—System performance is optimized. • **Mirror Mode 1LM**—System reliability is optimized by using half the system memory as backup.
Above 4G Decoding drop-down list	Enables or disables MMIO above 4GB or not. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The server does not map I/O of 64-bit PCI devices to 4GB or greater address space. • **Enabled**—The server maps I/O of 64-bit PCI devices to 4GB or greater address space. **Note** PCI devices that are 64-bit compliant but use a legacy option ROM may not function correctly with this setting enabled.

Name	Description
DCPMM Firmware Downgrade drop-down list	Whether the BIOS supports downgrading the DCPMM firmware. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—Support is disabled. • **Enabled**—Support is enabled.
NUMA drop-down list	Whether the BIOS supports Non-Uniform Memory Access (NUMA). This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—Support is disabled. • **Enabled**—Support is enabled.

Power/Performance Tab

Note BIOS parameters listed in this tab may vary depending on the server.

Table 21: BIOS Parameters in Power/Performance Tab

Name	Description
Reboot Host Immediately checkbox	Upon checking, reboots the host server immediately. You must check the checkbox after saving changes.
Hardware Prefetcher drop-down list	Whether the processor allows the Intel hardware prefetcher to fetch streams of data and instruction from memory into the unified second-level cache when necessary. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The hardware prefetcher is not used. • **Enabled**—The processor uses the hardware prefetcher when cache issues are detected.
Adjacent Cache Line Prefetcher drop-down list	Whether the processor fetches cache lines in even or odd pairs instead of fetching just the required line. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The processor only fetches the required line. • **Enabled**—The processor fetches both the required line and its paired line.

Name	Description
DCU Streamer Prefetch drop-down list	Whether the processor uses the DCU IP Prefetch mechanism to analyze historical cache access patterns and preload the most relevant lines in the L1 cache. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The processor does not try to anticipate cache read requirements and only fetches explicitly requested lines. • **Enabled**—The DCU prefetcher analyzes the cache read pattern and prefetches the next line in the cache if it determines that it may be needed.
DCU IP Prefetcher drop-down list	Whether the processor uses the DCU IP Prefetch mechanism to analyze historical cache access patterns and preload the most relevant lines in the L1 cache. This can be one of the following: • **Disabled**—The processor does not preload any cache data. • **Enabled**—The DCU IP prefetcher preloads the L1 cache with the data it determines to be the most relevant.
CPU Performance drop-down list	Sets the CPU performance profile for the options listed above. This can be one of the following: • **Enterprise**—All options are enabled. • **HPC**—All options are enabled. This setting is also known as high performance computing. • **Hight Throughput**—Only the DCU IP Prefetcher is enabled. The rest of the options are disabled. • **Custom**—All performance profile options can be configured from the BIOS setup on the server. In addition, the Hardware Prefetcher and Adjacent Cache-Line Prefetch options can be configured as well.

BIOS Parameters by Server Model

INDEX

D

E

F

G

H

I

J

K

L

M

N

O

P

R

S

T

U

V

W

X